This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

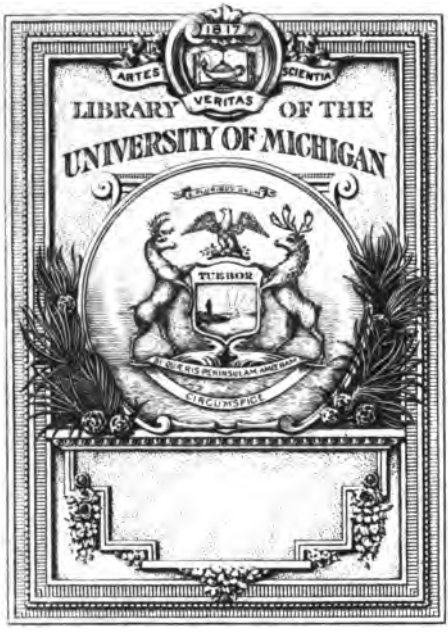
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`


ARTES
SCIENTIA
VERITAS
LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
TUEBOR
CIRCUMSPICE

D
965
.L22

A NEW VOYAGE TO THE NORTH:

CONTAINING,

A Full Account of NORWAY; the LAPLANDS, both *Daniſh*, *Swediſh* and *Muſcovite*; Of BORANDIA, SIBERIA, SAMOJEDIA, ZEMBLA and ISELAND: With the Deſcription of the Religion and Cuſtoms of theſe ſeveral Nations.

To which is added,

A Particular Relation of the Court of the CZAR; of the Religion and Cuſtoms of the *Muſcovites*; and a Short Hiſtory of MUSCOVY.

As it was taken by

A *French* Gentleman who Reſided there many Years.

Written by Monſieur ***, Employ'd by the Company of Merchants, Trading to the *North* from *Copenhagen*.

Now done into Engliſh.

LONDON; Printed for *Thomas Hodgſon* over againſt *Gray's-Inn-Gate* in *Holborn*, and *Anthony Barker* at the *Unicorn* next *Serjeant's-Inn-Gate*, *Fleetſtreet*. 1706.

Reference - Stacks
Lovell
12-22-44
51513

TO

Sr *Charles Thorold*, Kt,

Alderman and Sheriff

OF

LONDON.

SIR,

I Have a long time been desirous to let the World see, that if Writers of all kinds covet to Dedicate their Labours to the Court, and those who frequent it; it has not been for want of Opportunities to speak well of those Gentlemen, who are the Support, and Ornament of this Antient and Honourable City.

© 12-27-44 BBH

The Dedication.

In the Days, when 'twas the Intereſt of our Miniſters to flatter the Corruption, and Debauchery of the People, to prepare them for the Slavery to which they were leading them, they began their Attempts with decrying the City, as knowing they could never gain their Ends while Trade flouriſh'd, and the Citizens of *London* were thriving and wealthy; for Wealth naturally ſighs after Liberty, and 'tis prepoſterous for a Slave to think himſelf ſecure in his Property, or indeed that he has any.

While *London* was rich and free,'twas in vain for them to aim at enſlaving the reſt of the Nation: They therefore firſt attack'd the Virtues, which are the Life of Trade, Induſtry and Frugality, believing that if they could make her looſe, She would ſoon become poor, and then they might manage her as they thought fit, Poverty being eaſily reconcil'd to Bondage. The young Gentlemen of *England* were bred up in Averſion to Buſineſs and a Contempt of Sobriety, and imitating the Examples that were ſet them, grew in love with Idleneſs and Profuſion, which were ſet off as the only Signs of Gallantry, and Honour; that when, by this Means, they had waſted their own Fortunes, they might

might be the leſs ſollicitous to defend thoſe of other Men.

The Ridiculouſneſs of this Humour, was as obvious, as the danger of it to every Thinking Man, for at the ſame time that the Citizens were laugh'd at by the Men of Title and Precedence, they courted them to give their Daughters to their Sons, and their Sons to their Daughters; and yet very ingeniouſly ridicul'd thoſe Alliances, which were the Props of their tottering Fortunes, when they had ſhaken them by the Vices that were then in Faſhion.

The Wiſe and the Good ſaw thro' theſe miſchievous Politicks, and only the Silly, the Vain, and the Mad, were impos'd on by them. Thoſe who had no Money lik'd well enough to ſee thoſe that had it render'd deſpicable, and the Jeſt went round, till it had almoſt ſpread thro' the whole Kingdom, and our Religion and Liberties were going together. This was what was aim'd at, and had thoſe wretched Politicians had as much Cunning as Luck, we might not ſo eaſily have ſav'd our ſelves from the Ruin that threatned us.

With Liberty the People of *England* recover'd the Uſe of their Reaſon, and

were no longer to be deceiv'd by falſe Wit and fooliſh Raillery. They ſaw what Help thoſe Citizens, whom they had contemn'd, was to them, when their *All* lay at Stake, and have ſeen what Aſſiſtance they have given towards carrying on a long and expenſive War. Without them the Fate of *Europe* might e're this, have been decided, *Lewis* have poſſeſſ'd the *Univerſal Monarchy*, the *Seine*, as that Boaſter lately caus'd her to be repreſented, have held the *Thames* in Chains under her Feet.

But the *Thames* ſhall triumph over her, and our QUEEN the beſt and greateſt Prince in the World, by Her Piety and Government, has ſhewn ſo much the Beauty and Advantage of Virtue and Frugality, that they will never more be the Subject of the Scoffer; and Trade will always be reckon'd the main Support of the Strength and Glory of *England*.

'Tis for the Merchant then that every good *Engliſhman* ought to pray, as well as for the Hero, ſince we do not more depend on the Bravery of our Arms, than on the Continuance and Encreaſe of our Commerce. If you Gentlemen of the City have the particular Profit, the whole

whole Kingdom ſhares in the general: Her Fleets, which are the Terror and Safety of Nations, are maintain'd by yours, and without you Her Armies could not often act with the Speed that is neceſſary for Conqueſt. To be a Citizen of *Rome* was a Title much higher than any our Heralds can furniſh us with; and to be a Citizen of *London* would be as glorious, were the *Engliſh* Empire and the *Engliſh* Virtue as great as the *Roman*.

But, Sir, I forget I am talking to one of the Firſt Magiſtrates of this Famous City, whoſe Security and Peace lye ſo immediately under your Care. I ſhould have conſider'd that as you are a Man of Buſineſs, nothing can be more impertinent to you than long Epiſtles; and I muſt therefore finiſh this with hearty Prayers, for the Proſperity both of the Publick and Private Affairs that are fallen to your Lot, that they may be as happy as they are important.

I might add to this a ſhining Character of your Merit as a Merchant, a Gentleman, and a Magiſtrate; of your Zeal for Her Majeſty's Service, and the true Welfare of your Country; of your Humanity and Generoſity, and whatever elſe

elſe is deſirable in a great and a good Man: But I muſt deny my ſelf that Pleaſure out of Reſpect to yours. To thoſe who know you ſuch an Addition will be needleſs; To thoſe who do not the Truth may appear like Flattery, and even the Appearance of that would be offenſive. Flattery is only acceptable in a Place which pretends to be more refin'd; In the City 'tis like falſe Coyn and has no Currency.

I ſhou'd now ſay ſomething of the Treatiſe I preſume to addreſs to you, but that wou'd look like making my Opinion a Rule for yours, wherefore I leave it to your Judgment and Candour.

Some Perſons who ſet up for Nice in Relations of this Kind, are very wary of believing any thing out of their Knowledge; and ſuch may object againſt the Credit of our Author, from the Novelty and Strangeneſs of his Adventures. But as the Countries he deſcribes are almoſt entirely unknown to the Southern Parts of *Europe*, ſo the barbarous Manners and Cuſtoms of the Inhabitants of thoſe Northern Regions, may very well ſurprize: Yet 'tis unfair to judge from thence, that the Account he gives of 'em is not true. No Man has treated of this Subject, but con-

confirms moſt of what he ſays; he having been on the Spot himſelf, his own Authority is the beſt we can have in a thing of this Nature.

One of the moſt extraordinary Paſſages in his Book, is his Travelling above Two Hundred Miles in leſs than Twenty four Hours, thro' the Wilds of *Lapland* and *Borandia* in Sledges drawn by Rain-Deers. To me this ſeem'd at firſt very unaccountable; and yet when I look'd into other Relations of the North, I found they agreed with him in a great Meaſure. Even the Great Mr. *Cambden* in the Third Book of his Hiſtory of Queen *Elizabeth*, ſpeaking of Sir *Jeremy Bowes*'s return from his Embaſſy into *Muſcovy*, has theſe Expreſſions: *He was the firſt who brought into* England *the Beaſt call'd* Machlis, *never before ſeen here: 'Tis like an* Elk, *in Latin* Alce, *having no Joints in its Legs and yet wonderful ſwift. He brought alſo certain Fallow-Deers of admirable ſwiftneſs, which being yok'd together, wou'd draw a Man ſitting in a Sledge with incredible Speed.*

I hope the whole Voyage, will entertain you in your Hours of Leiſure, if any of yours can properly be ſo call'd, and

and Treating of Commerce, that you will not refuſe it the Honour of Your Protection. I am

SIR,

With all imaginable Reſpect,

Your moſt Obedient and

moſt Humble Servant,

THE CONTENTS

Of the ſeveral CHAPTERS.

CHAP. I. *The Author embarks at* Copenhagen, *and arrives at* Berghen *in* Norway. *Of the Manners of the* Norwegians, *and his Journey to the King of* Denmark's *Copper and Silver Mines.* Page. 1.

Chap. II. *Of the Author's embarking at* Dronthem, *the Danger of Sailing in the North-Sea, his Arrival at* Varangar *in the* Daniſh Lapland; *and of the Manners, ways of Living, Superſtition and Dreſs of the* Daniſh-Laplanders. p. 22.

Chap. III. *Of the Author's Journey by Land, from* Varangar *to* Mourmanskeimore, *in the* Muſcovite-Lapland; *and the manner of Travelling there in Sledges, drawn by Rain-Deers: An Account of the* Kilops, *the* Muſcovite-Laplanders, *the City of* Kola, *and the Trade of thoſe Parts.* p. 34.

Chap. IV. *Of the Author's departure from* Kola: *Of the Funeral Ceremonies of the* Lapland-Muſcovites: *Of their Women's Work; of their Hunting, and other Particulars relating to them: Of his Return to* Varangar, *his Arrival at* Borandia, *with an Account of the* Borandians p. 48.

Chap. V.

Chap. V. *The Author travels from* Vitzora *in* Borandia, *to* Petzora *in* Muſcovy: *Of the Trade of that Province; His Journey into* Siberia, *part of* Muſcovy *in* Aſia: *He meets with five Gentlemen baniſh'd by the* Czar *for ſelling of Sables. Their Adventures and Miſeries.* p. 77.

Chap. VI. *Of the Nature of the* Ruſſians; *their Contempt of the Sciences: Of their Clergy, their Liturgy, their Churches, Devotion, Marriages, and their Cruelty to their Wives. Of the* Czariſſa *or Empreſs, the manner of the* Czar's *chooſing a Wife; and of the Emperor's Children.* p. 97.

Chap. VII. *Of the Patriarchs: Of the Burials among the* Ruſſians: *Of their exceſſive Debauches in the* Carnaval *time: Of their Images; their Puniſhment of Hereticks: Of the Liberty of the Monks and Nuns: Of their Muſick and Dancing.* p. 114.

Chap. VIII. *Of the* Circaſſians *and* Coſſacks: *Of the Laws and Government of the* Muſcovites: *Of the* Ruſſian *Letters, and their manner of Writing: The Character of the Emperor* Alexis Michaelowitz; *with a Compariſon between him and his Anceſtors and of his Wars.* p. 126.

Chap. IX. *The Riſe and Progreſs of the* Ruſſian *Empire; Of the Family of the* Czar: *Of* John Baſilowitz, *ſurnam'd the* Tyrant; *His Conqueſts, his Humours, his Veneration for Queen* Elizabeth *of* England: *He joyns himſelf with a Company of Robbers: Of the Etymology of the Word* Czar, *the Emperor's Wives, his Diet, Recreations, Viſits, and the* Czaroidge *or Heir Apparent.* p. 133.

Chap. X.

Chap. X. *Of the* Czar's *Revenues, of his Court, Jewels and Cloaths, of the Empreſſes and Ladies of Honour's Apparel. How they travel, Of the Manners and Language of the* Ruſſians, *with the difference between them and other Nations: Of their Puniſhments in Criminal Caſes; An Inſtance of it, Of their Ignorance and Idolatry, and their Veneration for St.* Nicholas. page 146.

Chap. XI. *Of the* Polanders, *their Laws and Kings; of the Pox and Plica frequent among them; Of their Treaties; with a Compariſon between the* Ruſſian *and* Poliſh *Languages.* page 159.

Chap. XII. *Of the Imperial Family of* Ruſſia, *of the chief Favourites, and Miniſters, of the Manufactures ſet up by the Emperor and Empreſs: Of the Trade of* Ruſſia, *of* Engliſh *Cloth, and what means the* Dutch *make uſe of to ruine the* Engliſh *Commerce and ſettle their own* p. 164

Chap. XIII. *Of* Syberia *and its Inhabitants; Of* Caviare, *of the* Samojedes *and their Barbarity, and of ſeveral ſtrange Birds and Plants.* p. 183

Chap. XIV. *A ſhort Account of* Tartary *: Of their Marches, their barbarous Diets; of the* Colmacks; *and of ſome ſorts of Muſhrooms growing in* Ruſſia. p. 196

Chap. XV. *Of the Author's Departure from the* Exiles, *and his Arrival at* Papinogorod: *Of his departure thence, and his Arrival in* Samojeda, *with a Deſcription of the Country, Trade, and the Inhabitants.* p. 202

Chap. XVI. *Of the Author's Arrival at* Zembla; *Of the* Zemblians *and their Idol* Fetizo: *Of*

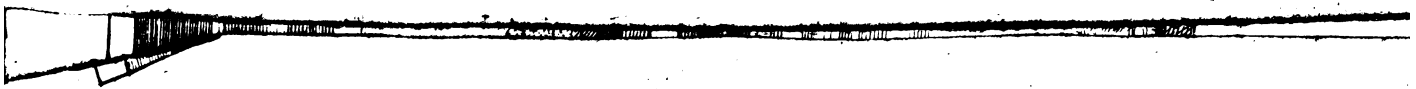
Of the Scurvy frequent in thoſe Parts : Of fiſhing for the Sea-Horſe, *and the danger in doing it.* p. 214

Chap. XVII. *Of the boldneſs of the Bears on the Coaſt of* Zembla ; *Of the taking two* Zemblians *in a Canoe ; an Account of ſtrange Birds, and of the Inhabitants of that Iſland.* page 224.

CHAP. XVIII. *Of the Author's Return and his Arrival at* Greenland ; *Of the Herring-fiſhery; Of a Storm and Meteors ; Of his Journey to* Hæcla ; *Of the Manners, Cuſtoms, and Superſtitions of the Iſelanders ; and his Arrival at* Copenhaguen: p. 233

Chap. XIX. *Of the Unicorn, Of the Virtues of its Horn ; Reflections on the Maps and Charts of the North, and the Errors Committed by Geographers in their placing of* Zembla, Greenland, *and* Samojedia.

The End of the Contents.



A VOYAGE TO THE NORTH.

CHAP. I.

The Author Embarks at Copenhagen, *and arrives at* Berghen *in* Norway. *Of the Manners of the* Norwegians, *and his Journey to the King of* Denmark's *Copper and Silver-Mines.*

SINCE my design in this Treatise is to describe only the Countries lying to the North, I shall confine my Discourse to those things that relate to the Manners, Cu-

Cuſtoms and Trade of the Northern People of *Europe*, and take no notice of the ſeveral Voyages that I have made to *Africk* and the *Indies*. The World has already ſeen divers compleat Relations of thoſe Parts, and my Obſervations are ſo little different from the many Accounts that have been given of *Aſia* and *Africa*, that they are not worth the Readers peruſal. What I ſhall treat of in the following Pages is entirely New, and the Remarks are ſuch as no Traveller has yet made on the Northern Nations.

About the year 1647, *Frederick* III. King of *Denmark* being deſirous to advance and increaſe the Trade of his Kingdom, eſtabliſh'd two Companies of Merchants at *Copenhagen*, his Capital City, the one was an *Iſeland* Company, and the other a Company of Traders to the North. The latter having obſerv'd that the Trade to *Norway* was very beneficial to them, oblig'd all that were concern'd in that Company to Sign a Petition to his *Daniſh* Majeſty in *February* 1653, repreſenting that a great Profit would ariſe to his Subjects by encouraging that Trade more, and enabling them to enlarge it by making further Diſcoveries in the North, from whence ſeveral rich Merchandizes might be imported.

His

His Majeſty hearkn'd to their requeſt, granted it, and allow'd them to extend their Commerces as far Northward as the Society ſhould think fit, upon which they fitted out ſeveral Ships to undertake a Voyage to *Norway* and the North. It happen'd I was at *Copenhagen*, when one of the Northern Fleet were Outward-bound, and underſtanding the King had commanded the Undertakers of this Enterprize to make all poſſible Diſcoveries of the Countries to which they came, and to bring back the moſt rare Curioſities that they could find there, I took a Fancy to the Voyage: One of the Company being my Friend, I went to him, deſir'd him to recommend me to his Partners, as a Perſon Qualify'd to go Surgeon of one of the Ships. 'Twas not difficult for him to ſucceed in procuring that Employment, the Company entertain'd me as ſuch and I entred into their Service.

All our Merchandize, Proviſions and Neceſſaries being aboard, we embark'd all of us that intended to make the Voyage, in the beginning of *April* 1670. We weigh'd Anchor, and ſet Sail with two Ships in our Company, and fair Wind and Weather from the Port of *Copenhagen*. We had a freſh Gale at South-Eaſt till we arriv'd at *Kal Gal*, a *Streight* which divides the

German-Ocean from the *Baltick-Sea.* 'Tis a very dangerous Paſſage, full of Rocks, and is forty Leagues in length from *Elſenore* to *Schagerhort.*

When we came over againſt *Maelſtrand*, a little City and Sea-Port, about thirty Leagues from *Copenhagen*, the Wind turn'd Northward, drove us back ten Leagues, and forc'd us to make ſome Port on the Coaſt. The firſt we came to we put into, and that was *Schallot* a Creek, where we caſt Anchor, and rode ſafe under the Caſtle, which look'd rather like a heap of Ruins than a place that was inhabited. 'Tis famous only for its Promontory, well known to Mariners who uſe the *Baltick*-Seas. We ſtaid there near three Days, on the fourth an Hour before Sun-riſing, the Wind ſhifted again to the Eaſt, ſo we hoiſted Anchor to proceed on our Voyage.

We had not been at Sea above four Hours, before the Wind veer'd to the North-Eaſt, and blew ſo ſtiff a gale that we were oblig'd to leave the Coaſt of *Gottenburg*, on which Shoar we were then, and to make directly over to that of *Jutland.* The Sands being frequent and ſhallow on thoſe parts, we were oblig'd to be almoſt always caſting out our Plummet. As we ſail'd along this Coaſt, a guſt of Wind drove us to a place

place where there were but three Fathom and half Water, and we ſhould certainly have run a-ground, had not our Pilot, who was a very dextrous Seaman, immediately tack'd about, when getting the advantage of the Wind, in half an Hour we ſounded fifteen Fathom Water. By the help of a ſide-Wind we held on our way for near two Leagues from the Sands we were like to run upon. Here we found our ſelves in an Eddy, where we were as ſteady as if we had been at Anchor. We preſently furl'd all our Sails except our Fore-Maſt, endeavouring to keep our ſelves out of it, but all our endeavours would have been in vain, had not the VVind veer'd a point or two to the South-South-Eaſt. We then loos'd our Sails, got through it, the VVind blowing freſh, and ſail'd towards the Coaſts of *Bahus*. VVe continu'd our courſe ſeveral Days and Nights with pleaſure, and afterwards about 8 a Clock one Morning diſcover'd the Promontory of *Chriſtian-Sand* in *Norway*. The Village that gives name to the Mountain is ſmall, the Port however is commodious. We did not ſtay long there, for the next Day we arriv'd at *Chriſtiana* or *Obſlo*, the Capital City of one of the five Governments of that Kingdom.

As ſoon as we were got into Port, we went aſhoar to deliver our Letters to the Companies Agents there, who receiv'd us with joy for the good News we brought them, of the Kings giving encouragement to the *Norway*-Company to make further Diſcoveries and enlarge their Trade in the North.

One of theſe Agents hearing I was a Stranger, and had been recommended to his Principals by one of their Society, and not the leaſt conſiderable Merchant among them, was very Civil to me, ſhew'd me all that was worth ſeeing, and told me all that was worth knowing, relating to the place at which we were arriv'd: He alſo commanded a Servant of his, who ſpoke *French* tolerably well, to go with me into the Country three or four Leagues, that I might ſee more of what there was particular in it. Early next Morning we took Horſe, and rode to *Wisby*, a large Village nine Miles from *Chriſtiana*, which ſtands between two Mountains. The Houſes are very low, and built of VVood without Iron-work or VVindows. There is a ſort of Lattice on the top of the Houſe to admit the Light, and they are all cover'd with Turf.

The

The Reader is desir'd to take notice, that this is not *Wisby* the Capital City of *Gothland*, where the Marine Laws were made.

The *Norwegian* Peasants are simple and very hospitable. They are all Fishermen, their only Trade is in Herrings, Cod Stockfish, and other Fish, fresh, salted, or dried. They are Slaves to the Nobility.

The *Norwegian* Women are very handsome, though they are red-Hair'd, they love Strangers, and are good Housewives. They spin and make Cloth for their Families, they look after the Cattle, of which there are great Numbers of all kinds as in *France*: There's also plenty of Game in this Country, as Elks, Stags, Roebucks, Boars, Goats, Rabbits, Hares, all sorts of Wild-Fowl, and Otters, Linx's, and Wild-Cats of divers Colours.

All *Norway* is a Mountainous Country, and consequently Bread-Corn will not grow there in any quantity, but the Inhabitants are abundantly supply'd from other parts by means of their Commerce; and what they want of Corn-Ground is made up in Pastures and Woods.

As we were returning towards *Christiana*, we met a Gentleman of the Neighbourhood, follow'd by two Servants and some Dogs, going a Hunting. He knew

the Man that was with me, and ask'd him if he would divert himſelf with an *Elk-Chace*, bidding him ask the ſame queſtion of me: We had time enough upon our hands, ſo we readily accepted his propoſal. After we had rid about a Mile we met his Huntſman, ſome other of his Servants, and ten or twelve Boors, who led us three Miles farther to a great Wood full of Buſhes. When we came to the entrance of it we alighted, and gave our Horſes to one of his Domeſticks to take charge of. The Chace had been prepar'd the Day before by the Gentlemans Vaſſals, or rather Subjects, for the Nobility of *Norway* are Sovereigns under the King in their own Territories. We were ſcarce forty Yards within the Wood, when we perceiv'd an Elk running towards us, but before either of us could fire a Peice, he dropt. I ask'd of my Guide and Interpreter, *How the Beaſt came to fall down dead in that manner?* He anſwer'd, *'Twas the Nature of that Animal to be taken thus with a kind of Falling-Sickneſs, which often ſeiz'd him in the beginning of the Chace.* I did not ſtand to reflect whether his fear might contribute to his Diſtemper, I ſeem'd to doubt the truth of it, and thought it to be an accident which did not often happen. My Guide aſſur'd me of the contrary,

trary, adding, *that from this Diſeaſe they were call'd* Elks *or miſerable Creatures.* The Beaſt is as big as a great Horſe, his Body like a Stags, 'tis large and longer; his Legs are long, his Feet broad and cloven, his Antlers great, hairy and broad like a Fallow-Deers, but not ſo well furniſh'd with Horns as a Stags. Had he not dropt as he did, I believe 'twould have been hard for us to have brought him down, as I perceiv'd ſoon after when we had rouz'd another, which we chas'd above two Hours before we could catch him, and we had never caught him had he not dropt down dead as the other did. He kill'd three of the Gentlemans beſt Dogs with his fore-Feet. The Gentleman was extreamly ſorry for the loſs of his Dogs, and would Hunt no more. He ſent to a Farm of his a Mile off, for a Cart to carry the Game we had caught to his Caſtle. We accompanied him thither at his Requeſt. 'Twas built like the reſt in that Country, after an old faſhion'd manner; it ſtood four Miles from *Wisby*, and he treated us there very ſplendidly.

My Guide telling the Lord of the Caſtle that I was a *Frenchman* employ'd by the *Norway*-Company at *Copenhagen* in the Service we were going about, he made me a Preſent of the Hinder left Legs of the two

two *Elks* we had kill'd, or rather ſeen die of themſelves, giving me to underſtand 'twas no ſmall favour, thoſe Legs being an infallible Cure of the Falling-Sickneſs. I replied by my Interpreter, *I wonder'd ſince the Foot of an Elk had ſo much Virtue in it, why the Animal that carried it always about with him did not Cure himſelf.* The Gentleman reflecting on what I had ſaid, laught out aloud, and told me *I was in the right, for that he had given it to ſeveral Perſons afflicted with the ſame Diſeaſe, and it did not Cure them, wherefore he had a long while ſuſpected that the pretended Virtue of the Elks Foot was a Vulgar miſtake; of which, he ſaid he did no more doubt than that the eating of the Fleſh of that Beaſt infected People with their Diſtemper*: He gave me many Inſtances of the bad effects eating Elks Fleſh had on Humane Bodies. I anſwer'd, *The Nails of thoſe unhappy Perſons would be a more Sovereign Cure in an Epilepſy than thoſe of the Elk.*

The Gentleman oblig'd us to Lodge with him that Night, and early the next Morning, after we had made a good Breakfaſt, we took our Leaves of him, and return'd to *Chriſtiana*, where we ſtaid four or five Days, and having received further Orders and Directions from the Companies Agents there, we embark'd,

embark'd, weigh'd Anchor, and made the beſt of our way for *Berghen*. We had a freſh gale at North-Eaſt till we arriv'd at *Stafanger*, where we were on a ſudden becalm'd, and having nothing elſe to employ our ſelves about, we fell all to Fiſhing.

There's abundance of all ſorts of Fiſh on the Coaſts of *Norway*; we got ſuch ſtore by our Fiſhing, that we were forc'd to keep *Lent* a long while after, being unwilling to throw our Fiſh overboard.

The Calm laſted five Days, on the ſixth towards Evening it blew up a brisk Gale South-Eaſt, by which in a few Days we reach'd the Port whither we were bound, to unload the Merchandize we had taken in for that place.

We Anchor'd in the Port of *Berghen*, one of the fineſt in *Europe*, and when our Cargo was unladen, I went to ſee the City, which is as large as *Abbeville*; 'tis divided into High and Low-Town, the one built on Rocks, the other on the Sea-ſhoar. 'Tis full of Merchants, and was formerly an Archbiſhoprick, which was aboliſh'd upon the Reformation of Religion in the King of *Denmark's* Territories. The Epiſcopal Palace was given to the *Hans*-Towns, the principal of which are *Hamburgh*, *Lubeck* and *Bremen*, for the *Anſeatick* Merchants to dwell in,

in, and the greateſt part of the Houſe was turn'd into Warehouſes, from whence they are call'd the *Cloyſter*, and the Merchants *Monks*, tho' they do not wear a Cowl, nor obſerve the Rules of any Order. This Place in the Popiſh Times belong'd to a Convent adjoyning to the Epiſcopal Palace, and when 'twas granted to the Merchants Trading to and from the *Hans-Towns*, the King oblig'd them to keep up the form of a Religious Houſe, ſo far that no Body ſhould Marry who liv'd in it: He that will have a VVife muſt leave the *Cloyſter* and live elſewhere; however he may deal and correſpond with his Brethren, whoſe principal Trade is in Herrings, Cod and Stockfiſh, a Commodity that goes off in great quantities in *Muſcovy*, *Sweden*, *Poland*, *Denmark*, *Germany*, *Holland* and other parts of *Europe*.

As ſoon as we had diſcharg'd the Cargo we were to deliver at *Berghen*, we weigh'd Anchor and ſet ſail for *Dronthem* with a South-Eaſterly VVind. VVe were to unlade above half of our Loading there; 'twas conſign'd to the Surveyor of the Copper and Silver-Mines, for the uſe of the VVorkmen and Miners whom he employ'd in that ſervice, and was a ſupply of Bread and Beer.

VVe

VVe were ſcarce half-way thither, when the VVind blew ſo ſtiff, that in fifteen or ſixteen Hours we found our ſelves over againſt *Stora*, where it ceas'd on a ſudden, and the Storm was follow'd by a Calm, the moſt uneaſie thing in the VVorld to Mariners. VVe were oblig'd to return to our former Diverſion, and ſo ſpend the time that we could not tell how better to paſs it away than in Fiſhing. VVe took ſuch a prodigious quantity of *Klip-Fiſh*, that we were forc'd to Salt and Barrel a great part of them up, and they were very ſerviceable to us in the courſe of our Voyage. *Klip-Fiſh* are a ſort of *Cod*, bigger than thoſe of *Newfound-Land*; they never leave the Rocks laying always upon them or under them, from whence they are call'd *Klip-Fiſh* in the *German* Tongue, which ſignifies *Rock-Fiſh* in ours.

The Calm held ſeveral Days, and then the VVind blew a freſh Gale VVeſt-South-VVeſt, which was fair for us, and in three Days we arriv'd at *Dronthem*. VVhen we came aſhoar we deliver'd our Letters to the *Surveyor-General* of the Mines: By thoſe Letters the *Surveyor* was order'd to unlade our Ships as faſt as poſſible that we might purſue our Voyage. He told us he could not go to work till the Officers who were to receive the Proviſions

ſions came back from the *Mines*, whither they were gone about the Affairs of thoſe Works. We preſt him to haſten our diſcharge, and he offer'd to ſend a Meſſenger on purpoſe to fetch an Officer to unlade us. I deſired leave of our Maſter to accompany the Meſſenger, which having obtain'd, the next Day betimes in the Morning, the *Surveyors* Man and I mounted on Horſeback, and departed for the Mines. When we came to *Steckby* we were oblig'd to put up, the Night coming on, and we had a long Wood to go through, wherein were Boars, VVolves and Linx's in great numbers, very dangerous for Paſſengers to encounter. The Road was ſo Rocky that we could reach no further in a whole Day, tho' that Town was ſcarce eighteen Miles from *Dronthem*. The next Morning, before Sun-riſing, we left *Steckby*, and proceeded towards the *Mines*, where we arriv'd juſt as 'twas Night, and lodg'd at the *Forges*. VVe were entertain'd by the People who had the Charge of the *Mines*, according to the Cuſtom of the Country, with Tobacco, Beer and Brandy. Our Hoſts believ'd we would not think our ſelves made welome, unleſs we were made Drunk, and therefore plied us ſo faſt with Bumpers, that there was no avoiding a Debauch. I met with an Officer

ficer there who ſpoke *French*, having waited upon a *Norwegian* Gentleman in *France*. I told him that I came out of Curioſity to ſee the *Mines*, and I beg'd him to let me enter them; he promis'd I ſhould do it on the Morrow, and after two Hours Drinking and Talking, he permitted me to go to Bed.

The next Day as ſoon as it was Light, the Meſſenger that came with me to the *Mines*, poſted for *Dronthem* with one of the Officers who were to receive the Proviſions we brought for the Miners. I was left at the Houſe of a Maſter-Miner, who was to go to *Dronthem* the Day after, and I was glad of the opportunity of his Company, by which means I had a whole Day to ſpare to view the *Mines* and *Miners*. VVhen I roſe, I went to the Officer that ſpoke *French*, and he had provided a Breakfaſt for me and the Maſter-*Miner* my Landlord, whom he deſir'd to ſhew me the way down into the *Mines*, that I might ſee them work'd.

VVhen we had Breakfaſted, and 'tis obſervable that the *Norwegians* are much given to Drinking and good Chear, we went fifty or ſixty Paces from the *Forges*, which are on a high Mountain: There we came to the mouth of one of the *Mines*, over which was erected a Machine like a Crane, turn'd by two Men

in

in two great VVheels, to draw up pieces of the Mine, as Maſons draw Free-ſtone out of the Quarries near *Paris*, or Potters their Clay in many places in *France*. The Maſter-Miner and I were put into a wooden Tub, and our Hands into Iron Bands faſtned to it; thus we deſcended into the Mine above fifty Fathom deep. VVhen we got to the bottom of it, it look'd like *Pluto*'s Kingdom; there was nothing to be ſeen all around but frightful Caverns, flaming Fires, and Creatures more like Devils than Men. They were cloath'd with black Leather-Jackets, each having a *Camail*, ſuch as our Prieſts in *France* wear in the VVinter: A piece of peaked Leather is tied about the Head of each Miner a little above his Noſe, and hangs down to his Breaſt like a Muffler; they have all Aprons of the ſame, according to the Figure 1.

Theſe Miners are conſtantly and differently employ'd; ſome uſe the *Chiſel*, ſome the *Hatchet* to knock out the Copper-Stones; others are buſied to ſeek after the Veins of Copper, or to ſound to try if they can diſcover any watry place, which ſometimes is hid in the Bowels of the Earth, and breaking forth on a ſudden, drowns them all if they don't take care.

The

The Maſter-*Miner* who deſcended with me into the *Mine*, perceiving I was afraid, and that I was taken with a Cold-Fit, rung a Bell, which was to give notice to the People above that they ſhould draw us up again. Accordingly we got up with the ſame eaſe that we went down, I was very glad to breath the ſerene Air, free from the unwholſome Damps of thoſe Subterranean Dwellings; I had been enough to ſatisfie my Curioſity, and could I with ſafety have ſtaid longer there was little more to be ſeen. We went to that Officers Houſe who could Diſcourſe with me in my own Language, and was entertain'd very handſomly and generouſly by him, his Travelling having rendred him more Polite than his Brethren at the *Mines*.

After Dinner he order'd Horſes to be got ready for us to ride to the *Silver-Mines*. The Officer, the Maſter-*Miner* and my ſelf went thither, where we waited on the *Surveyor* of the Works, who made us heartily welcome, preſented each of us with a great Glaſs full of Brandy, drank off one of the ſame ſize and ſhew us the way, and then gave us the ſecond Courſe in the *Norwegian* Collation, Beer and Tobacco.

When we had ſmok'd and drunk as much as the Surveyor thought fit, he conducted us to the *Forges*, a mile off his Houſe; at which, as in the *Copper-Mines*, there are ſeveral Workmen always employ'd: Some break the Stones, others waſh them, others melt and refine the Ore, and others Coin the Money for the King of *Denmark*. Theſe *Mines* turn both very well to account, and are not the leaſt part of his *Daniſh Majeſties* Revenue.

From the *Forges* we went to the *Mine* that was next to it; 'twas on a high Mountain; the Maſter-*Miner* and I were let down as at his own Mine, and I ſaw nothing there which I had not ſeen before in that of Copper. Theſe *Miners* were cloath'd like the others, and their Work and Habitations ſeem'd to be much the ſame. They, both the one and the other, leave off working in the *Mines* in the Winter, Spring, Summer and Autumn being their only time of Buſineſs: They work in the Spring and Fall three Hours in the Morning, and three after Dinner, in the Summer four Hours in the Morning and five after Dinner, the reſt of their time they ſpend in Mirth and Feaſting. They delight much in Dancing, and have their Hautboys, Violins, and other Inſtruments for that purpoſe.

When

VVhen I return'd to the *Copper-Forges* I found the People at their Sports, and was not a little pleas'd to ſee the variety of their Humours and Paſtimes. For three Months, in the dead of the Winter, they don't work at all, nevertheleſs they receive their full-pay as if they did, at the rate of a Crown a Day. Having ſeen all that was to be ſeen at the *Silver-Mines*, the *Surveyor* took us home with him, gave us ſuch another Collation as we had before, and a good Supper after it. When we had all of us ſufficiently refreſh'd our ſelves we went to Bed, and the next morning the Maſter-*Miner* and I took our leaves of the *Surveyor*, who had provided a plentiful Breakfaſt againſt we got up, and rode from his Houſe to the *Copper-Mines*, where I thank'd the Officer that ſpoke *French*, for his Civilities, and the *Maſter-Miner* and my ſelf ſet out for *Dronthem*. Night overtook us by that time we were got 8 Miles from the *Mines*, which put us on a neceſſity of taking up our Quarters at a Boors Cottage in the next Village we came to. The Peaſant knew my Companion, and thought himſelf highly honour'd in ſuch a Gueſt; he therefore did his utmoſt to treat us to our liking. He provided two Pheaſants, and a Hare he had lately kill'd, for our Supper, that Game being free for

the Boors in thoſe Parts. They are ſeldom unfurniſh'd of it: Before we ſate down, he brought out his Tobacco, Beer and Brandy made of Malt-Spirits: After Supper we all of us fell to ſmoaking like Dragons, and darnk Brandy and Beer almoſt all Night, which was the moſt beaſtly one I ever paſt in my Life: But 'tis the Cuſtom of the Country, and both the Gentry and People by Converſation and Merriment mean only Lewdneſs and Debauchery. The Peaſant perceiving the Maſter-*Miner* was quite drunk, was ſo overjoy'd at it that he ſoon became in as bad a condition himſelf. VVe had all now had our Doſe, and ſome clean Straw was brought, and ſpread in the middle of the Chamber to ſerve us inſtead of Beds: VVe lay down upon it together and ſlept till Morning. The Sun was up before the Maſter-*Miner* and the Boor wak'd. I order'd, as well as I could, our Horſes to be got ready, reſolving, if poſſible, to get to *Dronthem* that Day. I made the Boors Sons gueſs at my meaning by ſigns: Our Horſes were ſaddl'd, and then I wak'd my Companion and his Hoſt. They were no ſooner up but we muſt again fall to Eating and Drinking: That work done, we mounted on Horſeback, took our leaves of the Peaſant, and made the beſt of our way to *Dronthem*, where we arriv'd

riv'd before it was Dark. When I came to my Lodgings, I found an intimate Friend of mine, *Hans Omer*, diverting himſelf with reading a Book I lent him, call'd *Le Prince des Operateurs*, The Prince of Operators, which I wrote ſome Years before, and in which I endeavour'd to ſhew the difference between Reaſon and Operation in the Practice of Phyſick. The Emperor *Gallienus* baniſh'd Phyſicians out of his Empire, becauſe they were not proper for War and could not cure his Soldiers when they were wounded, nor ſet broken or diſlocated Bones, nor heal Tumors, nor perform other Operations as *Aſclepiades* and *Podalirus* did at the Siege of *Troy*. The ſame did *Machaon*, *Achilles*'s Phyſician, in whoſe praiſe *Homer* has left theſe Verſes;

Ἰητρὸς γὰρ ἀνὴρ πολλῶν ἀντάξιος ἄλλων
Ἰὸς τ' ἐκτάμνειν ἐπὶ τ' ἤπια φάρμακα πάσειν.

Gontran King of *Orleans* order'd his Phyſicians to be thrown out of the Window, becauſe they could not ſave his Wives Life, who had been Poyſon'd. 'Tis out of doubt that the uncertainty of Medicine is not ſo beneficial to the Health of Man as the certainty of Operation; and eſpecially at Sea, the Surgeon, to ſpeak impartially, is much more

neceſſary than the Doctor. I hope the Reader will excuſe this ſhort Digreſſion in favour of my Profeſſion.

CHAP. II.

Of the Authors embarking at Dronthem, *the danger of Sailing in the North-Sea, his Arrival at* Varanger *in the* Daniſh Lapland: *And of the Manners, way of Living, Superſtition and Dreſs of the* Daniſh Laplanders.

TWo Days after I return'd to *Dronthem* all our Cargo was unladen, and we had taken aboard the Proviſions the *Surveyor-General* of the *Mines* was to furniſh us with. The Wind ſetting fair, we embark'd, and a few Hours after ſet ſail to continue our *Voyage* to the *North*. The Wind held fair ſeveral Days till we were under the *Artick Polar-Circle*, where we were becalm'd on the Coaſts. Some of our Crew were ſo ſuperſtitious as to give Credit to the common Tradition, that

that the Inhabitants of the Country under that *Circle*, as well as thoſe that dwell on the *Coaſts* of the Sea of *Finland*, are Wind-Merchants, and can raiſe and ſell a Gale when they pleaſe. 'Tis certain they are almoſt all of them *Wizards*, and as Children of the Prince of the Air, pretend to diſpoſe of the Wind as their proper Merchandiſe. VVe were impatient of lying on that Coaſt, and that impatience put us upon trying any means, however improbable to ſucceed, rather than ſtay there longer. The Captain of our Ship was for trading with theſe *Wizards*; accordingly he ſent his Long-Boat aſhoar, with his Mate, to Traffick with theſe Traders, and purchaſe a Wind of them, the Commodity we ſtood moſt in need of at that Time. Tho' I believ'd nothing of the matter, I had the curioſity to accompany him; we Landed at the firſt Village we came to, apply'd our ſelves to the chief *Negromancer*, told him what we wanted, and ask'd, *if he could furniſh us with a Wind that would laſt till we arriv'd at* Mourmanskimre: The Mate could ſpeak enough of his Language to underſtand him and to be underſtood. The *Conjurer* gravely replied *No, his power extended no farther than the Promontory of* Rouxella. VVe had a great way thither, and if we reach'd ſo far, we thought

we might eaſily make the *North-Cape*, ſo the Mate deſir'd him to go aboard with us and drive a Bargain with our Captain. The *Wizard* conſented to the propoſal, took three of his Comrades with him, leapt into a ſmall Fiſher-Boat, and went aboard our Ship. Our Captain and he ſoon agreed upon the price, he was to give him *Ten Kronen*, about five or ſix and thirty Shillings in *Engliſh* Money, and a pound of Tobacco, for which the *Wizard* was to furniſh us with a fair Wind as far as *Rouxella*. VVhen the Bargain was made, and the Money paid, the *Wizard* tied a Woollen Rag to the corner of our Foremaſt; 'twas about half a Yard long and a Nail broad; it had three Knots, and this was all our Captain had for his *Ten Kronen*. When the *Negromancer* had done this feat, he return'd in his Boat to the Village with his Companions. The Captain of our Ship, according to the Inſtructions he had receiv'd from the *Conjurer*, untied the firſt Knot in the Rag, and immediately the Wind ſtruck up Weſt-South-VVeſt a brisk Gale, and drove us, and the other Ships in our Company, thirty Leagues beyond *Maelſtroom*, without giving our Captain any occaſion to untie the ſecond Knot; and this Accident confirm'd our Crew in their Diabolical Superſtition.

This

This *Maelſtroom* is the greateſt Eddy or VVhirlpool in the *Norwegian* Sea, in which many Veſſels that approach'd too near it, have periſh'd: For this reaſon ſuch as are acquainted with thoſe Coaſts keep out to Sea eight or ten Leagues to avoid it, and the Rocks that lie off *Oſtraford* oppoſite to *Maelſtroom*. There are ſeveral ſuch Eddy's five, ſix and ſeven Leagues from the Shoar, and this danger obliges all Pilots to keep far out to Sea.

The Wind beginning to ſhift a little, and inclining to the North, our Captain unty'd the ſecond Knot, which kept it in its old Corner, till we made the Promontory of *Rouxella*. VVhen we had paſt it the Needle of our Compaſs turn'd back half an Inch, by which ſome fancy'd that there was *Loadſtone* in the Mountain, and had not we had a very dextrous Pilot, we ſhou'd certainly have loſt our courſe.

Knowing that the other Ships in our Company were in the ſame trouble as our ſelves, our Pilot ſhut up his Compaſs, and hung out a Flag on our Foremaſt-Top, as a ſignal for the other Ships to follow us. He was very well acquainted with the Coaſts and Courſe, having often Piloted the *Dutch* Ships trading that way, in which he had no other helps than his *Sea-Chart*.

VVe

VVe were two Days and two Nights in this dangerous condition, having nothing to depend on but the Pilots Experience: On the third Day being far diſtant from the Mountains of *Rouxella*, the Needle of our Compaſs pointed again to its Center, from whence we concluded that we drew near the North-Cape, where the VVind failing us, our Captain unty'd the third Knot, at which there aroſe a North-North-Eaſt Wind ſo furious, that we thought the Heavens would fall down upon us, and that God would juſtly puniſh us with Deſtruction for dealing with Infernal Artiſts, and not truſting to his Providence: We cou'd bear no Sail during the Tempeſt: Our Ship drove at the Mercy of the Winds and Waves, which toſt us ſo violently that we expected every Minute to go to the bottom.

Tho' we were not above ten or twelve Leagues from the Coaſt of the *Daniſh Lapland*, yet we did not imagine the Storm would throw us upon it. We fear'd the Winds ſo much we did not think of Land, and when we thought our ſelves ſecure from the Rocks, we were almoſt driven upon one by a ſudden blaſt thirty Leagues above the Cape, and four from Shoar. Every Man fell upon his Knees, and beg'd pardon of God, believing

lieving we ſhould at that very inſtant be daſh'd to pieces. I confeſs I never was ſo afraid in my Life, and I believe all the Crew were in as great Conſternation as my ſelf, when by good luck, or rather thro' Divine Mercy, the extraordinary force and agitation of the Waves prevented our ſtriking, and drove us a Musket-ſhot off the Rock. Our Ship having receiv'd no damage, only by a little ſlight touch on the skirt of the Rock, ſprung a Leak a little above the Keel, and two or three Planks were ſomewhat bilg'd in the bottom of the Ships-Hold, the Water enter'd, and we were oblig'd to pump inceſſantly.

On the fourth Day the Wind was laid, however we could not heartily rejoyce for our own ſafety, having loſt ſight of our Friends in the other Veſſels, who, we fear'd, were at the bottom by this time. Notwithſtanding we continu'd our Courſe with a favourable Gale, we had ſeveral Foot-Water in our Hold, and had much ado to Live. The Wind was pretty fair, wherefore we reſolv'd to make the firſt Port to ſtop our Leaks and refit. But the Coaſts of the Sea all over the *North* are ſo full of Rocks that the Ports and Creeks are inacceſſible, and we were forc'd to ſail on two Days longer before we could find any place for our

our purpoſe. The next Morning we arriv'd on the Coaſts of *Wardhus*, the chief Town of the Government of *Daniſh-Lapland*, where the King of *Denmark* has a Caſtle Garriſon'd by two Companies of Soldiers. Here is alſo a Collector to receive the Duties impos'd on Foreigners trading to or from *Archangel* on the *White-Sea*. This Officer ſuffer'd us to paſs without examining us, believing by our Colours and the Guns we gave him to ſalute the Caſtle, that our Ship was a *Dane*. We then ſail'd to *Varanger*, and caſt Anchor half a League from the Town. We preſently put our Long-Boat by our Ships ſide to carry ſome of the Crew aſhoar; no Body aboard had any knowledge of the place, which ſeem'd to us to be very *Wild*, wherefore our Captain took eight Men, well Arm'd, with him, and reſolv'd to ſee whether there was any Convenience for us there to refit, or any Trade to be driv'n with the Inhabitants. In leſs than half an Hour we arriv'd at *Varanger*, a populous Town and a convenient Port, but ſo little frequented, that the Inhabitants were amaz'd to ſee us. Whether their Aſtoniſhment proceeded from the ſight of Men Arm'd, or of Men leſs Barbarous than themſelves, I ſhall not pretend to determine. Our Captain addreſt himſelf to thoſe who

who ſeem'd to have moſt Authority among them, demanding if they would permit us to enter their Port, and aſſiſt us to refit our Ship, and were diſpos'd to Trade with us. They gave him little encouragement for Traffick, but underſtanding we were Merchants who were going to Fiſh * *Walrus*, they offer'd us their aſſiſtance towards refitting our Ship, which we thankfully accepted. Having obſerv'd the Commodiouſneſs of the Harbour, we return'd to our Ship, weigh'd Anchor, and enter'd the Port, where we diſcharg'd our Ballaſt, which was only Sand to ſerve for Counterpoiſe to ſome Bundles of Tobacco, and Bales of Cloth, which were the Cargo we were to Trade with. When the Ship was unladen, we ſecur'd the Goods in a Houſe near the Shoar that was lock'd up, and the Captain and Super-Cargo, order'd a Watch to be ſet upon it.

* *Cheval-Marins*, or *Sea-Horſes*.

To gain the good Will of the Inhabitants of the Country, who as I have ſaid were *Laplanders*, ſubject to the King of *Denmark*, we gave them ſome Rolls of Tobacco, a more grateful Preſent to them than Gold. To retaliate our kindneſs, they treated us with the beſt they had, ſome dry'd Fiſh, that ſerves inſtead of Bread, ſome Veniſon, not very extraordinary, being the Fleſh of *Rain-Deer*, an Animal that

what is often to be met with in *Lapland*, *Borandia*, *Samojeſſia* and *Siberia*. They brought us Bears-Fleſh, and the Fleſh of other Wild-Beaſts which we had no knowledge of; alſo freſh Fiſh boil'd without Salt. Their Sawce to this Diſh is either the Oil of other Fiſh, or a ſour Drink which is one of the beſt Beveridges in their Opinion. We could none of us bear them Company at this Repaſt. Their *Ragous* were not to our liking, ſo we ſent for Proviſions from Aboard, and endeavour'd to be as merry as we could in ſuch a place, and among ſuch Barbarians. Salt-Beef and Biſket was our choiceſt Diſh; we offer'd ſome of it to the *Laplanders*, but when they had taſted it, our Food ſeem'd as ridiculous to them, as theirs did to us. Our Beer was more acceptable to them, they drank it off freely, and were pleas'd with the Brandy we gave them, yet their own ſour Drink went down with more Guſto than either our Brandy or Beer. It conſiſts of an Infuſion of Juniper-Berries, and of a Grain like Lentils, the Name of which I have forgot: It grows there in abundance, as the Juniper Trees do. I never ſaw any thing ſo like that Grain as Lentils, and our Botaniſts have made no mention of it in any of their Diſcoveries. They make Brandy with the

ſame

ſame Grain. It has the ſame effect as ours that is drawn off of Grapes, and their common Drink, tho' 'tis ſtrong as our common Wine, and ſerves for the ſame Uſes.

Tho' theſe *Laplanders* are *Lutherans*, and have Prieſts to inſtruct them, they however deal ſtill with the Devil; almoſt all of them are *Wizards*, and ſo Superſtitious, that if they meet a Beaſt in the way, whoſe appearance is reckon'd ominous, they return home, and don't ſtir out all that Day; and when they go a Fiſhing, if they have but one Fiſh in their firſt Draught, they take it for an ill Augury, pack up their Nets and leave work for that time.

Both Men and Women are low of Stature, yet ſtrong and dextrous; their Faces broad and flat; they are flat-Nos'd; their Complexions are ſwarthy like the reſt of the People of the *North*; their Eyes are like a Hogs; their Eye-Lids are almoſt all like thoſe that are Blear-Ey'd: They are Stupid, Brutal and Laſcivious, eſpecially the Women, who proſtitute themſelves to all Comers, if they can do it unknown to their Husbands. The Womens Cloaths are made either of courſe Cloath or *Raan-Deers* Skins with the Hair outward: Their Stockings are of the ſame, their Shoes of Fiſh Skins, the Scales

Scales hanging on them: They have no Latchets, and reſemble ſomewhat the Wooden-Shoes worn by the Poor in *France*. Their Coifs are like the *Norwegian* Womens; their Hair is twiſted up in two twiſts, one hangs down on one Shoulder, and the other on t'other. They wear a Cornet-Coif on their Heads, made of courſe Canvas. All their Linnen is of the ſame fineneſs; ſome of them wear a ſort of Ruff eight Fingers broad, which they tie behind as the Gypſies do in other Countries. The Figure mark'd *N.* 2. is a repreſentation of one of theſe Women.

As for the Men they are Cloath'd with *Rain-Deer* Skins, the Hair outwards; their Coats are ſhort and come down but half-way their Thighs like a Waſtcoat; their Breeches and Stockings are of the ſame, the Hair always outwards. On theſe they wear a ſort of Boots made of Fiſh-Skin, which tho' rough and courſe, are ſtitcht ſo neatly that the Seams are not to be ſeen. Some of 'em wear no Boots, but Stockings only like the Women. Their Bonnets are round like a Seamans Cap, they are alſo made of Rain-Deers Skins, the Hair ſtill outwards, and edg'd with a band of Fox Skin, ſome White, ſome Gray, as in Figure *N.* 3.

Theſe

Theſe *Laplander's* Lodgings are like thoſe of the Boors about *Chriſtiana*: They have no Light but what enters by a Hole in the top of the Hutt. They don't make uſe of Beds to lie on any more than the other *Laplanders*, the *Borandians*, *Samojeſſians*, *Siberians*, *Zemblians*, *Iſlanders*, or the reſt of the *Northern* Nations. The whole Family of a *Daniſh-Laplander*, Maſter, Miſtreſs, Children, Men and Maids, lie down all together very familiarly, on Bear-Skins ſpread in the middle of the Room, and when they riſe in the Morning, the Bear-Skins are taken up and laid by till they are wanted again at Night for the ſame occaſion.

In each Houſe there is a great black Cat which is highly valued by them: The *Laplanders* talk to it as if it was a reaſonable Creature. Every Night they go out of their Huts with it to conſult it alone, and it will follow like a Dog, either a Fiſhing or Hunting.

Tho' this Animal looks like a Cat in appearance, yet had I had ever ſo little more Superſtition, I ſhould have believ'd it to have been a Familiar Spirit miniſtring to them: A terrible Sight to a Southern Chriſtian.

CHAP. III.

Of the Authors Journey by Land from Varanger *to* Mourmanskei-more, *in the* Muſcovite-Lapland, *and the manner of Travelling there in Sledges, drawn by Rain-Deers: An account of the* Kilops, *the* Muſcovite-Laplanders, *the City* Kola, *and the Trade of thoſe Parts.*

WE unloaded our Ship the next Day after our Arrival at *Varanger*, the Inhabitants help'd us to haul her aſhoar, that we might examine and refit her. The Captain found her much more damag'd than he expected, and deſir'd the *Laplanders* to get him Timber proper for the Carpenters uſe. They readily anſwer'd his requeſt, and went to a neighbouring Mountain to fell ſome for him.

Our Super-Cargo finding the Ship would be ſome time a re-fitting, thought it might not be improper to take a Journey into the Country, to try whether there

there was any Traffick to be had. To this purpoſe he pick't out me, and two more of the Ships Crew to accompany him. Early the next Morning, being the 12*th* of *May*, we ſet out for our Journey, taking with us ſome Tobacco and Cloth to trade with, and Bisket and ſalt Pork and Beef to eat. We deſir'd three of the Inhabitants of *Varanger* to go along with us, as well to ſhew us the way, as to help carry our Goods and Proviſions to the next Village. The *Laplanders* were willing enough to ſerve us, ſo we follow'd them thro' Woods, Mountains and Vallies without meeting any living Creature, till towards four a Clock in the Afternoon we perceiv'd two *White Bears* of an exceſſive bigneſs, coming, as we Strangers thought, to devour us, and indeed we were in mortal fear of being devour'd by them.

Our Guides perceiving the terror we were in, bid us not be afraid, for we need only have our Arms ready to defend our ſelves, in caſe they approach'd too near us; which we did, Cocking and Priming our Fuſees, and hacking our Flints. Whether or no the Bears were frightn'd at the Fire we ſtruck out of the Flints, or with the ſmell of the Powder, I ſhall not undertake to decide, but they preſently fled from us ſo faſt, that in a

Moment they were out of ſight. An Hour before Night, as we deſcended a Mountain, we ſpy'd a Dozen Houſes at the foot of it; they were at a great diſtance one from the other, and farther off we ſaw a Herd of Beaſts like Stags, which our Guides told us were *Rain-Deers*.

When we came to the Village, the *Laplanders* that travell'd with us conducted us to a Hut, where being very weary, we were glad to reſt our ſelves, for we had held a long Journey in very bad way, with Luggage on our Backs that incumber'd and tir'd us. We gave a piece of Role-Tobacco to our Hoſt, who receiv'd it with joy, aſſuring us he had not had ſo valuable a Preſent in nine Months before. To make us amends, he brought out his Brandy-Bottle, ſome *Rain-Deers* Fleſh dreſt without ſalting, and ſome dry'd Fiſh, which we gave to our Guides, and ſup'd our ſelves with the Victuals we brought with us. When we had made an end of our Supper, we went to our Repoſe, and lay down on Bear-Skins after the Country-Faſhion.

When we aroſe in the Morning, we ask'd our Hoſt if he had nothing to barter with us for Cloth and Tobacco. He reply'd he had ſome *Wolf*, *Fox* and *white Squirrel*-Skins, that his Neighbours had alſo ſome of the ſame Commodities, and would

would gladly truck with us. We bid him, by our Interpreters, bring out his Skins, and if he had any Cloaths made of *Rain-Deer*-Skins, we would deal with him for four Suits, which we wanted to keep us warm. Accordingly he brought forth his Merchandiſe, and we bought it of him, paying him part in Tobacco and part in Cloth: We truck'd alſo with his Neighbours, as long as they had any thing to offer us worth our buying, and when we had drain'd that Market, we pray'd our Hoſt to lend us ſome *Rain-Deers* to carry us farther up into the Country. He was very willing to help us to the utmoſt of his power, the Tobacco we gave him having gain'd his Friendſhip intirely. He took down a Horn that hung up in his Cottage, went out and blew it to call the *Rain-Deers* to him; immediately fourteen or fifteen of thoſe Animals came running towards the Hut. He put ſix of them to ſix Sledges, each Sledge made ſomewhat like a *Gondola*: 'Twas plac'd on four Poſts joyn'd together by other croſs-Poſts nail'd to them, and this was faſtn'd to two Poſts two Foot longer than the Sledge, that ran on the Ground. We put our Merchandiſe in one Sledge, each of us had one for himſelf, and the other we aſſign'd to one of our Guides, who underſtood the Lan-

guage of the *Muſcovite-Laplanders*, and that of the *Kilops*: Him we took with us, the other two Inhabitants of *Vuranger* we diſmiſt, having paid them in Tobacco for their trouble. We put on our *Lapland*-Cloaths, and lay down each of us in his Sledge, cover'd with a Bear-Skin at the back of the Sledge. There were two Girts made of *Rain-Deers* Leather, in which we thruſt our Arms up to the Shoulders to keep us ſteady, and had each a Stick, with a ſtrong Firrel at the end of it, to ſupport the Sledge, if it ſhould be likely to overturn by ſtumps of Trees or Stones lying in the way.

When we were ready to ſet out, our Hoſt mutter'd ſome VVords in the Ear of the *Rain-Deers*. I enquir'd afterwards of our Guide, *What he meant by it?* he ſaid, *'Twas to tell them whither they ſhould carry us*; ſo ſilly are thoſe barbarous VVretches. Cuſtom had made that muttering ſo familiar to the Beaſts that drew us, that when our Hoſt had gone to all ſix, they ran away with us ſo ſwiftly, that we thought we were drawn by ſo many Devils. They continu'd their Pace over Hills and Dales, without keeping the beaten Road, all Day long, till ſeven a Clock in the Evening, when they brought us to a large Village ſcituate between two Mountains, near a great Lake. Here they

they ſtop'd ſhort, at the fourth Houſe in the Place, which tho' large, was very ordinary and clowniſh. They beat the Ground with their Feet, and the Maſter of the Houſe hearing a Noiſe, came forth with his Servants to help us out of our Sledges, and unharneſs our Cattle. One of them brought out a little Juniper-Can full of Brandy, of which he gave each of us a Brimmer out of a Bowl made alſo of Juniper-VVood. This was to put us in heart, for our Guide had inform'd him, that we were afraid of our Lives, being drawn along ſo ſwiftly by thoſe Animals in Sledges, which was a way of Travelling we were not us'd to.

The Horns of theſe Beaſts, both Male and Female, are ſomewhat higher than thoſe of a Stag, but more Crooked, Hairy, and not ſo well furniſh'd with Sprouts as a Stags are. They are of the ſame Colour as Stags, and not bigger. Their Feet are cloven like theirs, but as big as Hoofs of Oxen. They live upon Moſs, which grows every where in thoſe Parts; the Females yield Milk like Cows, the *Laplanders* make Butter and Cheeſe of it, and both is very good. Their Harneſs is a Collar of *Rain-Deer* Leather, by which they are faſten'd to the two ſhafts of the Sledge, not much unlike our Horſes to a Coach.

Thus they draw it with incredible ſpeed directly to the Place whither you are to go, without being guided by him who rides in it, as is repreſented in the Figure *N.* 4.

When we got out of our Sledges, we were conducted by our Hoſt into his Hut, which, like the reſt of the Cottages in the place, was very little, low and cover'd with the bark of Trees, the Light entring at a hole in the top of it, as we have elſewhere obſerv'd.

Theſe *Laplanders* were Cloath'd in a manner little differing from thoſe of *Varanger*; their Apparel was of the ſame Make and Materials, but longer; their Coats were of *Rain-Deers* Skin, the Hair turn'd outwards. The VVomen were dreſt in Garments of the ſame Skin, their Hair twiſted as the VVomens of *Varanger*. On their Heads they wore a round Bonnet inſtead of a *Coif*, 'twas made of the ſame Skin, with their Cloaths, and their Hair ſtill outwards.

VVe gave our Hoſt an end of Tobacco about two Inches long, with which he was mightily pleas'd, and thank'd us heartily for it. VVe gave an end not quite ſo long to each of the Inhabitants of the place, to make them our Friends, and to ſecure us the better againſt any attempts from theſe Barbarians, who were

more

more Brutal than thoſe we laſt dealt with. We ſup'd on the Proviſions we brought with us, and our Guide eat ſome of our Hoſts dry'd Fiſh, and freſh *Rain-Deer* Veniſon. We ask'd him, *How many Leagues we had come that Day?* He anſwer'd, *Above thirty, and that we were in the Territory of* Mourmanskeimore. The Inhabitants talkt a Language quite different from thoſe of *Varanger*, but our Guide had been often in the Country, and underſtood them, and was underſtood by them.

After Supper we lay down on Bear-Skins to take our reſt, as we had done the Night before, having firſt barter'd away our *Lapland*-Habits with our Hoſt, for others that were longer; and a parcel of Tobacco for a Hundred *Grey Squirrels*, a Fur very much eſteem'd in *Denmark* and other parts of *Europe*.

The next Day, being the 14*th* of *May*, we told our Hoſt, by our Interpreter, that we deſir'd him to provide Sledges to go farther into the Country. This he did accordingly, and the other Inhabitants of the Village came to help us forward in our Journey, bringing Brandy with them to drink to us at parting.

They put ſix *Rain-Deers* to ſix Sledges, in one of them we ſtow'd our Merchandiſe and Proviſions; and our Hoſt having

ly, was a welcome repoſe to our weary Limbs, ſufficiently jog'd in the Sledges.

In the Morning we roſe as early as our Hoſt, and demanded of our Interpreter, *How many Leagues we had travell'd the Day before?* He reply'd, *At leaſt Forty.* But he muſt be out either in his Reckoning, or the Leagues muſt not be ſo long as they are generally calculated to be, for forty of their Leagues make one hundred and ſixty of thoſe between *Paris* and *Lyons*, each *Lapland* League being as long as a *German*. Let a Man be never ſo well mounted, he can't ride a Horſeback above five a Day. Our Guide alſo inform'd us that we were in the *Muſcovite-Lapland*.

We bid him ask the Inhabitants of the Village, whom we had preſented with Tobacco, and been treated by them with Brandy, Whether they had any Commodities to truck with us for Tobacco and Cloth? We had ſome Roles of the former left, and moſt of our Bales of the latter, Tobacco being by much the better Commodity. The *Laplanders* reply'd, They had ſome Furs, we ask't to ſee them, and they brought them out to ſhew us. They were *White Fox-Skins*, *Black and Grey Fox-Skins*, *Grey Squirrels* and *Sables*, tho' not of ſo fine

a

a Colour as thoſe of *Borandia*, *Samojeſſia* and *Siberia*.

Theſe Merchandiſes were what we wanted, ſo we ſoon ſtruck a bargain for them, and paid the Inhabitants in Cloth and Tobacco. When our Market was over, we fell to Drinking with them. They were not quite ſo Brutal as the other *Laplanders* we had dealt with, but they were very rude and indiſcreet in Converſation, doing thoſe things before us that Decency will not ſuffer me to name.

It growing late, and we deſigning to proceed yet further to diſpoſe of the few Rolls of Tobacco we had left, we pray'd our Hoſt, by our Interpreter, to furniſh us with *Sledges* and freſh *Rain-Deer*. He harneſt and prepar'd as many as we had occaſion for; we mounted our Sledges and departed at one a Clock. We ran, with our former ſpeed, thro' difficult and unbeaten Paths, till ſix, without meeting with one Habitation: Half an Hour after, as we were deſcending a Hill, we ſpy'd two Huts under a Rock, a little out of the way: Our Guide told us that two *Kilops* lived there, who as ſoon as they ſaw us, they fled with their Wives and Families. We travell'd on three Hours longer, and came to no Houſe or any thing like a Dwelling-Place,

Place, till at laſt we diſcover'd a great Village on the ſide of a Hill, built on the banks of a River. Here we arriv'd at Eleven a Clock at Night, and went to that Cottage for Lodging whither our Cattle were pleas'd to conduct us. It happen'd to be in the middle of the Village. The Maſter of the Houſe receiv'd us very kindly, made a Fire in the middle of his Hut, gave us Brandy, dry'd Fiſh, and *Rain-Deer* Veniſon ſalted, at which we were a little ſurpriz'd, having not met with any in our Travels hitherto who made uſe of Salt, as theſe did. He alſo gave us ſome Milk and Salt-Butter, very good, and 'twould have been better had we had any Bread to eat with it, but we had conſum'd our Store, and ſhould have been very much put to it, had we not met with ſo good entertainment here. Our Guide would not taſt a bit of ſalt Meat, ſo he was oblig'd to live on the freſh Veniſon he brought with him. Having ſupt plentifully, we lay down *a-la-mode de Lapland*, on Bear-Skins, and ſlept till Morning. We roſe early the next Day, the 16*th* of *May*, took our leaves of our Hoſt, and there being no Trading in that Village, paſt the River to proceed to *Kola*. On the other ſide of the River, which is as big as the *Seine*, we came to another Village, and went to the

the moſt likely Houſe to hire Sledges and *Rain-Deer* to carry us to *Kola*, for we could get none in the place where we Lodg'd. Here we furniſh'd our ſelves, and about Noon we arriv'd at *Kola*, a little City, or rather a great Town, very Country-like, built among Mountains on the ſide of a River, near ten Leagues from the *North-Sea*. To the Eaſt of it are large Foreſts and Deſerts, *Mourmanskeimore* to the Weſt, and prodigious high Mountains to the South. The Houſes are very low, built of VVood, and handſomely cover'd with Fiſh-Bones. On the top of them the Light enters at a Hole, as in other places of *Lapland*. There's but one Street in it.

The Inhabitants, like the other *Muſcovites*, are ſevere, ſuſpicious, and ſo jealous, that they lock up their VVives that Strangers may not ſee them. Our Hoſt took all our Cloth off our hands, for which he gave us in Exchange two *Linx-Skins* ſpotted like a *Leopards*, three Dozen of *White Fox-Skins*, half a Dozen of *Wietſras*, an Animal which ſomewhat reſembles a *Badger*, but its Hair is longer and rougher, his Colour is a blackiſh-red, and his Tail like a Fox's. VVe had alſo ſome *Ermines* of him. There were ſome Ells of Cloth above what we were to give him, for which he oblig'd himſelf

to ſupply us with Proviſions for our Journey back to *Varanger*, and to help us to Sledges as far as the River we lately paſt. He treated us as well as he could, and we ſupt and ſlept as we had done elſewhere in our Travels thro' *Lapland.*

CHAP. IV.

Of the Authors departure from Kola: *Of the Funeral Ceremonies of the* Lapland-Muſcovites: *Of their VVomens work: Of their Hunting, and other particulars relating to them: Of his return to* Varanger, *his Arrival at* Borandia, *and an Account of the* Borandians.

THe next Morning as we were preparing to depart, our Hoſt having provided us ſtore of Bisket, Ginger-bread and *Rain-Deer* Veniſon ſalted and dry'd, as alſo a barrel of Brandy to ſerve us in our return: Before we had quite packt up

up our Furs in Bales, his Neighbours underſtanding we had ſtill a few Rolls of Tobacco left, came to ask us if we would truck them for more Skins; we reply'd with all our Hearts, ſo they fetch'd 'em, being a Dozen of *Ermines*, two *White Fox-Skins*, and four *Lynx's*, not ſo good as thoſe we had of our Hoſt.

The bargain made, we took their Furs, and gave them the reſidue of our Cargo of Tobacco, except ſeven or eight Rolls which we reſerv'd for our own uſe, and to pay for the hire of our *Rain-Deer* and *Sledges* in our way back. Tobacco is more neceſſary than Money to thoſe who Travel in that wild and unfrequented Country, the *Laplanders* valuing an end of Tobacco as long as ones Finger more than a Crown-piece. The Kings of *Denmark* and *Sweden*, and the Czar of *Muſcovy* have laid ſevere Taxes upon it, and there are Officers ſettled in their Frontier-Towns to collect their Impoſts upon it.

When we had done our buſineſs, according to the Cuſtom of the Place we muſt drink with our Chapman. Our Entertainment every where was Brandy, and it held till two a-Clock in the Afternoon. We then intreated our Hoſt to get the Sledges, we had hir'd of him, ready, which we had done in a Minute.

We ſtow'd our Merchandize in one of them, got into the other our ſelves, drank a full Glaſs at Parting with our Dealers, bid them Adieu, and ſet out for the Village on the other ſide of the River we paſt the Day before. Our *Rain-Deer*, to our thinking, ran faſter than any we had hir'd in all our Journey to *Kola*. We arriv'd at the firſt Village by ſeven a-Clock, we paſt the River and came to the ſecond, where we put up at our old Landlords, who receiv'd us with joy hoping that we had ſtill an end of Tobacco left to give him for the hire of ſome *Rain Deer* and Sledges.

He preſently gave each of us a Cup of Brandy, for they toſs it off there as we do Beer in the South, and ask'd us if we would have the *Rain-Deer* put to the Sledges: We reply'd we had rather reſt our ſelves till Morning; for there was no Village beſides in ſome ſcores of Miles from this.

He fill'd out another Cup, which when we had drank, he offer'd to take us with him to the Funeral of one of his Neighbours, who had been Dead about four Hours. We were very glad of the opportunity of ſeeing their ridiculous Ceremonies on that occaſion, having heard much talk of them.

We

We accompany'd him to the Houſe of the Deceas'd, we ſaw his Corpſe taken from the Bear-Skins, on which it lay, and remov'd by ſix of his moſt intimate Friends into a Wooden Coffin, being firſt wrap'd in Linnen, his Face and Hands only bare. In one Hand they put a Purſe with Money in it, to pay the Fee of the Porter of Paradice-Gate; and in the other, a Paſs, ſign'd by a Prieſt, to be giv'n to St. *Peter* as a Certificate that he was a good Chriſtian, and ought to be admitted into Heaven. They alſo put into his Coffin a Barrel of Brandy, ſome dry'd Fiſh, and *Rain-Deer* Veniſon, to ſerve him to eat and drink on the Road, having a long Journey to take. They then light ſome Fir-Tree Roots pil'd up to a convenient diſtance from the Coffin, Weep and Howl plentifully, making ſtrange Geſtures, and turning themſelves in a thouſand different Poſture-, to ſhew the extravagance of their real or affected ſorrow.

When this Noiſe and Geſticulation was over, they march'd round the Corpſe ſeveral times in Proceſſion, asking the Dead Man, *Why he dy'd? If he was angry with his Wife? If he wanted any thing? If he was Hungry or a-Dry? If he had loſt his Game at Hunting? Or had had bad luck in Fiſhing? Or had not Cloaths to his*

Mind? Then they fell out a Howling again, Limping and Acting like ſo many Mad-Men: One of their Prieſts, who aſſiſted at the Solemnity, ever now and then ſprinkl'd ſome Holy-Water on the Corpſe, the ſame did the Mourners.

I forgot to inform the Reader, that having an extraordinary Veneration for St. *Nicholas*, they, as well as the *Muſcovites*, are *Nicholaitans* by Religion, and always place the Image of that Saint near the Bodies of their Dead, inſtead of a Crucifix.

This Saint is not the ſame for whom we Celebrate a Feſtival in *France*, but *Nicholas* one of the Seven Deacons mention'd in the Acts of the Apoſtles. His Image is dreſt up by them in a Pilgrims Habit, in a long Robe with a *Camail* hanging down over his Shoulders, a broad Girdle about his Middle, and a Staff in his Hand, as in *Figure* 5.

The Noiſe they made having almoſt deafn'd us, and being weary with looking on their barbarous Rites, we left the Cottage of the Defunct to go to our Hoſts, where we found only our Hoſteſs at home. She had made a Salley out of the place to which her Husband had confin'd her, on our Arrival. As ſoon as ſhe ſaw us, ſuppoſing he was with us, ſhe would have retir'd to her Berry; but our Guide and

and Interpreter giving her to underſtand the Good-Man was at the Funeral, and would not come home preſently, ſhe ſtaid. She view'd us all round, one after another, look'd very kindly on us, drew her Seat near us, and ſhew'd us a Bonnet of her own embroidring, done very curiouſly with Tinſel Threads.

The Work of all the *Lapland-Muſcovite* Women is to make Cloaths for themſelves, their Husbands and their Children. The Edges of them are all embroider'd with Tinſel Threads: They draw them between their Teeth, as fine as the VVire-drawers do their Threads of Gold and Silver with their drawing-Iron. They work with a good Grace; they are handſome, well ſhap'd and good humour'd, and, but that they know how jealous their Husbands are of them, and fear their Reſentments, they would willingly proſtitute themſelves to Strangers, for which reaſon they are ſhut up when any come among them. VVhile our Hoſt was buſy'd about the Funeral, we pull'd out ſome of our Proviſions, and gave our Land-Lady ſome of every ſort to taſt; ſhe lik'd all, but eſpecially the Ginger-Bread; ſhe drank two or three Glaſſes of Brandy, and then withdrew to the place of her Confinement, fearing her Husband might ſurprize her with us, which would

have rais'd his jealouſie to ſuch a Degree, that he certainly would have us'd her very ſcurvily.

VVhen our Landlord came home, he oblig'd us to take a Cup or two more with him, to ſmoak a Pipe, and ſup together. For us he brought forth the Victuals he had in his Houſe which he thought would be moſt grateful to us, as Salt-Butter which we eat with Bread. Our Guide would not touch it, and for him the Man of the Houſe got ſome Bears-Fleſh, which he broil'd on the Coals, and ſome dry'd Fiſh.

All the Cottages in this Village were like the others we had obſerv'd elſewhere, built of VVood, and cover'd with Turf, but they were handſomer and better ſet off than any we had ſeen in the Country, being both within and without adorn'd with VVorks of Fiſh-Bones, curiouſly plac'd and inlaid. VVe made as good a Supper as we could, and accoſding to Cuſtom, lay down with the Family on Bear-Skins. Our Landlady only was miſſing, and ſhe was to do Pennance, by her ſelf, in a Corner till we were gone.

In the Morning early, on the 18*th* of *May*, our Hoſt provided our *Rain-Deer* and Sledges for us; we ſtow'd our Bales, ſeated our ſelves, and away we went, our

our *Rain-Deer* running as faſt as thoſe we hir'd at *Kola.* In two Hours they carry'd us ſix Leagues, where paſſing between two Hills, we ſpy'd a *Laplander* going a Hunting. He came up towards us, ſliding on the Snow, which in that Country does not melt till *Midſummer*, as faſt as we ran in our Sledges. He ſlid as faſt on *Skates* made of the Bark of a certain Tree: They were ſeven Foot and half long, only four Fingers broad, and flat at bottom. He was dreſt like the other *Laplanders* in a Garment made of *Rain-Deers* Skin, with the Hair outwards. His Cap, his Gloves, his Coat, his Breeches and Boots were embroider'd with Tinſel. He had a Girt of *Rain-Deers* Skin about his VVaſt, a Dart in one Hand, a Bow in the other, and a Quiver hanging at his Back: A black Cat follow'd him, as is repreſented in *Figure 6.*

He kept Company with us about half a League, we parted at the foot of the next Mountain, we deſcended it and he ſtruck off another way. VVe continu'd our *route* three Days, ſtopping at the ſame places where we lay in our Journey outwards, and meeting with no new Adventures: Our Entertainment, our way of Travelling, and every thing was the ſame as before. About nine a Clock at

Night, on the 21*ſt* of *May*, we arriv'd ſafe at *Varanger*, having receiv'd many Services, and no Wrong throughout the whole Country of *Daniſh-Lapland*; for tho' the Inhabitants are Poor, Ignorant, Brutiſh, and moſt of them *Negromancers*, they are however Faithful, and given to no manner of Theft or Fraud. This Honeſty is their greateſt, if not their only Virtue. They are ſo dextrous in throwing a Dart, that they will put a Crown Piece thirty Paces off, and ſtrike thro' it; as for the Bow they are ſo skilful, that they'l ſhoot their Game in what part they pleaſe. They don't much care to go to the Wars, and when ever the Kings of *Sweden* and *Denmark*, or the Czar of *Muſcovy* have occaſion for Soldiers, for fear of being forc'd to ſerve, they leave their Dwellings and fly to the Woods.

They have plenty of Fowl, as Geeſe, Ducks, Pullets and other ſorts: They feed them not with Juniper-Berries, but with another Grain of which they make their Drink, and when that is ſcarce, or for variety, they give them Fiſh to eat.

The greateſt part of the Wild-Beaſts in *Lapland* are white, as Bears, Wolves, Foxes and Hares, and even their Crows are ſo white, that they may be compar'd with the Swan,

Swan, having nothing black about them but their Bills and Feet.

The Fiſh they dry to eat inſtead of Bread is very broad, and two or three Ells long, without Bones, and excepting the Fat, has a very good taſt; 'tis firm and ſubſtantial: They call it *Raff.*

As for other Fiſh which they eat boil'd they have all ſorts among them. Their Utenſils within Doors are made of Copper or Wood; and tho' they eat no Salt, and generally hate it, yet they boil all their Meat in Sea-Water, if they are near enough to come at it conveniently. They have a kind of Dogs a Foot long and four Inches high; their Hair is an Inch long, of a yellowiſh-white Colour, rough and ſtanding up like Hogs-briſtles: They have curl'd Tails, ſtrait Ears like a Wolf, Head and Snout like a Rat, are very fit to catch Mice, which they watch like our Cats, and when they have caught them, eat 'em. For this reaſon the *Laplanders* value them at a high rate, tho' they are very ugly, as may be ſeen in *Figure* 7.

There is alſo a ſort of Wild-Bird in *Lapland*, of a Grey-Pearl Colour, as big as a Sheep: His Head is like a Cats; his Eyes red and ſparkling; his Claws and Beak like an Eagles, with which he will take up Hares and other ſmall Game, as is ſhewn in *Figure* 8.

Our

Our Captain began to Caulk the Ship the ſame Day we return'd to the Port. In two or three Days after 'twas in a condition to put to Sea, and we Laded our Ballaſt. In the mean time we treated the Inhabitants with Tobacco and Brandy, to keep them in good Humour, for our Crew fancy'd that if we did not bribe them to be our Friends, they might, in revenge, raiſe contrary Winds by their Conjurations. They were very grateful to us in the Opinion of our Mariners, for five Days after, being the *26th* of *May*, there ſprung up a Wind, the moſt favourable for us in the Compaſs, to carus out of the little Sea of *Varanger*; wherefore we weigh'd Anchor, and ſet Sail at Seven a Clock in the Morning. The Wind ſhifting afterwards from one Quarter to another, we were oblig'd to caſt Anchor under the Shoar, over againſt the Iſland of *Wardhus*. The Captain of the Caſtle ſpying us, and knowing who we were, came off to us in a Shallop: When he was aboard we entertain'd him as well as we could, and he return'd to the Caſtle very well ſatisfy'd with his reception.

The next Day the Wind ſettling to a Point, we kept out to Sea, and held our Courſe North-North-Eaſt, with all our Sails looſe.

In

In three Days Sail we were got into a Climate where was no Night; we never loſt ſight of the Sun there, always ſeeing it on one ſide or other of us, before or behind us. On the laſt Day of *May* we ſpy'd the Mountains call'd *Spitz-Bergen*, at which time a North-Wind blew up ſo violently, that we could not keep to Sea, and were forc'd to leave them to the North-North-Weſt, and ſteer our Courſe Eaſt-South-Eaſt, endeavouring to make the Shoar, that we might lie under it, and be ſhelter'd from the Weather. We continu'd our Courſe three Days longer, very much incommoded by the Ice, which being broken and toſt by the Tempeſt, beat againſt our Ships-ſtern and ſides ſo furiouſly, that we expected every Minute to founder.

On the fourth of *June* we ſpy'd ſome high Mountains to the Eaſt, we ſteer'd that way to make them, and ſhelter our ſelves under a Promontory; but the Wind blowing freſher and freſher, ſtill North, we were oblig'd to tack about towards the Coaſts of *Borandia*. We arriv'd at a Bay and enter'd it in a few Hours: The Haven was very Commodious: We lay there ſafe from all Weather, in twelve or thirteen Fathom-Water.

We

We had ſcarce caſt Anchor before we ſpy'd two Ships in the Bay, about a Musket-ſhot off of us; we perceiv'd they were two of our Company from whom we were ſeparated in the Storm that drove us into *Varanger*. We were extreamly glad to meet with them, fir'd three Guns, and hung out our Flag on the Stern, as a ſignal of our Arrival. They rejoyc'd as much to ſee us ſafe, for we reciprocally believ'd that they and we were gone to the bottom. They anſwer'd our Guns by twice as many, hung out all their Flags and Pendants. We did the like, wiſhing for an opportunity to throw out our Long-Boat, and go aboard 'em, but the Wind blew ſo ſtiff, we durſt not attempt it till four and twenty Hours after. They were as impatient as we to know how we eſcap'd in the Storm, in which we were ſeparated from them; and as ſoon as the Wind ſlacken'd a Boat came off from each of them to board us. We embrac'd one another with extraordinary Affection and Joy, as People that had found Friends whom they thought had been buried in the Deep. They told us how the Storm drove them on the Coaſts of *Juhorskt*, near an Iſland where they could not Anchor becauſe of the Rocks, which they diſcover'd by ſounding: They had ſcarce three Fathom-Water,

Water, and were forc'd to tack about immediately for fear of running upon them. By the favour of a Point of Wind North-North-Eaſt, they continu'd their Courſe, keeping to Sea as well as they could tho' with much difficulty. In three Days time they reach'd the Bay where we met with them, and Anchor'd under the Promontories of *Borandia*, eight or nine Leagues from the Iſland call'd *Kildomovia*. We told them, in our turn, what perils we had run, and we were forc'd to enter the Sea of *Varanger*, and to Anchor there, to refit our Ship, or we ſhould not have been able to proceed on our Voyage. We inform'd them alſo of our Super-Cargo's and my Journey thro' all *Lapland*, both *Daniſh*, *Swediſh* and *Muſcovite*, of our Traffick and Adventures. The Account we gave them of our Trade, incourag'd them to go aſhoar, and try if they could find any body there that would deal with them. We held a Council, and reſolv'd that a Captain, a Super-Cargo, two Accountants who underſtood both the Language of the North and the *Ruſſian*, twenty Seamen of all our Crews, and my ſelf, well Arm'd, ſhould Land, taking with us ſeveral Days Proviſion.

Purſuant to this reſolution, two Long-Boats were got ready; we went into them, and ſail'd to Shoar, where we Landed

Landed, and aſcended a Hill to ſee if we could diſcover any Habitations: But ſeeing none we march'd on to a Neighbouring Mountain half a League from thence, where we ſpy'd five or ſix Perſons, at two three Leagues diſtance, among Buſhes of Thorns and Briars: They came towards us till they perceiv'd us advancing, then they turn'd their Backs, and fled away ſo faſt that we loſt ſight of them in an inſtant. However we follow'd their track ſo diligently, imagining 'twould lead us to ſome Village, that in two Hours march, as we deſcended a Mountain, we ſaw ſome Huts in the Vale below; we advanc'd towards them, and found thirty or forty Men Arm'd with Darts and Arrows, prepar'd to receive, and give us Battle; for the Inhabitants ſeeing us come in ſo ſtrong a Body, took us for Enemies. VVe halted a while and conſulted what we had beſt to do, whether we ſhould retreat to our Ships or attack them: They were VVild and Bold, and nothing was to be got by defeating them, which inclin'd us to retire, but one of our Accountants offer'd to go up to them by himſelf, and let them know that we were Friends and Merchants, who came to Trade with them, if they had any Commodities to truck with us for ours. All the Company approv'd of the propoſal.

ſal. He approach'd nearer to them, carrying with him two Rolls of Tobacco, and a little barrel of Brandy. When he was ſo near that he might hear what they ſaid, one of them, who ſeem'd to be their Captain, ask'd him in the *Muſcovite* Language, *Who we were, and what we would have?* The Man reply'd, *We were Merchants and Friends, that deſir'd nothing but their Friendſhip, and to Trade with them, if they had any thing to ſell us that was for our purpoſe.* They immediately abated of their Fury, ſeem'd very well diſpos'd to deal with us, and made ſigns to the Man to come up to them: He return'd the ſignal to us, and we joyn'd Companies to our mutual ſatisfaction. When we came near them, I was amaz'd to ſee them much ſhorter than the *Laplanders*; their Eyes were little, the white of them inclining to a reddiſh-yellow; their Faces flat and broad; their Heads great; their Noſes flat; their Legs thick, and their Complexions ſwarthy. Their Cloaths were a Jerkin that reach'd down to their Knees, a ſtrait pair of Breeches, a Cap and Stockings, all of *White Bear-Skin*, the Hair turn'd outwards: Their Shoes were made of the Bark of Trees.

Their Huts were all built and cover'd with Fiſh-bones, very low and Oval, the Light entring only at the Door, which

which was made like the Mouth of an Oven.

They ſubſiſt by Hunting and Fiſhing, eat all their Meat roaſted without Salt, and uſe dry'd Fiſh inſtead of Bread. They drink Water after they have infus'd ſome Juniper-Berries into it, without boiling, or any other preparation: They put the Berries and the Water into a Tub together, and let it ſtand till the Berries rot there, which gives the Water a ſharp and agreeable Taſt, at leaſt in a Country where there's nothing better to be got.

The *Borandian* Women are as ugly as the Men; they are dreſt alike, and go as well as they a Fiſhing and Hunting. They have no Notion of Religion, and live like Beaſts.

We barter'd away all the Tobacco and Brandy we brought with us for our ſtore, for Fox-Skins, Wolf-Skins, and a few Ermines.

They had a great many more Skins of all ſorts, and would feign have truck'd with us for Brandy and Tobacco: We told them, *We had enough of both Commodities aboard, and if they would go with us we would be ſure to give them all poſſible ſatisfaction.* They agreed to it, took up their Skins, and carry'd 'em along with 'em to the Shoar, where they ſtood admiring

miring our Ships. We made a ſignal to them to ſend us off Boats to fetch our Chapmen; each Ship ſent us two. I went in one of them with the Super-Cargo, the Accountant that treated with the *Borandians*, the *Borandian* with whom he firſt treated, and another of them who underſtood the *Muſcovite* Language, having been in *Muſcovy*: The other *Borandians* ſtaid on the Sea-ſhoar. When they came aboard, our Captain underſtanding what ſort of Perſons they were, how wild and brutal, to tame them a little, and render them ſerviceable to us, gave each of them an end of Tobacco about an Inch long, which they took with Joy: He alſo fill'd out a brimmer of Brandy to each, and I never ſaw any of the Barbarians ſo much tranſported as they were at their Entertainment. They brought ſome Furs with them, which we bought for Tobacco and Brandy. We demanded of them, *If there was any convenience of Travelling in their Country, to Trade with the Inhabitants?* They told us *There was, but that we muſt expect nothing but Furs.* We reply'd, *That was the Commodity we wanted.* They anſwer'd, *We might have what we would of that kind for Tobacco, Brandy and Money; and if we pleas'd might Trade as far as* Siberia, *whither they would conduct us.* We hir'd them to be

our Guides, forward and backward, and to furniſh us with what Conveniencies the Country afforded in our Journey, for two Rolls of Tobacco, and two Quarts of Brandy, promiſing them further rewards in caſe the Trade turn'd to Account, and they aſſiſted us in it. They ſaid, *That we muſt pay for our Rain-Deer and Sledges, and as for other things they would take care to provide what we ſhould think neceſſary.* Our Captain made the bargain with them, gave 'em another brimmer of Brandy, and then ſet 'em aſhore to prepare what was proper for our Journey. They got things ready in an inſtant, and made ſuch a report of our kindneſs to them aboard, and our Generoſity, that their Countrymen were very much our Friends. Two Boats-Crews went aſhoar, and our Super-Cargo with them, to truck with the other *Borandians*, Brandy and Tobacco for Furs. They were unwilling at firſt to come aboard our Ships, but afterwards when we were better acquainted, they came freely if they had any opportunity. We bought their Furs of them, treated them with Brandy, and in return they invited us, by ſeveral ſigns, to their Habitations. In ſeven or eight Hours we had provided our ſelves for our Journey, and our two *Borandians* had brought down ſix Sledges, drawn by ſix *Rain-Deer*

Deer to the Water-ſide: We ask'd them *Why they did not bring more?* They anſwer'd, *There were no more to be had in thoſe Parts.* Obſerving that theſe Beaſts were larger than the *Rain-Deer* of *Lapland*, we demanded *If they were alſo ſtronger?* They reply'd *Yes*, and *that one of their Rain-Deer would draw two Men, whereas thoſe of* Lapland *could draw but one.* There was convenience in the *Borandian* Sledges for two Men to ſit. Upon this our Captain call'd a Council of all the Officers, and 'twas agreed, That our Super-Cargo, the two Accountants that could ſpeak the *Ruſſian* Language, my ſelf, and a Seaman out of each Ship ſhould go with the two *Borandians* to Trade. One of the Sledges we loaded with Tobacco, Brandy, Gold, Silver and Copper to the value of three or four thouſand Pounds. Our Super-Cargo and my ſelf rode together in one of the Sledges; one Accountant and a *Borandian* in another; the other Accountant and t'other *Borandian* in the third; two Seamen in the fourth; the other Seaman in the fifth, and he riding by himſelf, we ſtow'd ſome barrels of Brandy and Rolls of Tobacco in his Sledge: The ſixth carry'd our Proviſions and other Merchandiſe. We ſat one at one end of the Sledge and the other at t'other, facing each other. The *Rain-*

Deer ran away with us as faſt as thoſe of *Lapland*. In eight Hours time they drew us twenty Leagues over Hills and Dales, thro' Woods and Valleys, and we met no Body in our way. At laſt as we came near a Fir-Tree VVood, we ſaw five or ſix Houſes or Huts, about a hundred Yards diſtant one from another. We arriv'd at the Village, we baited our *Rain-Deer* with Moſs, and our ſelves with Bisket and Beef: Our *Borandians* eat dry'd Fiſh dipt in Fiſh-Oil, for they would not touch our ſalt Meat, and did not love our Bisket. They drank at a Neighbouring Fountain, and then chear'd themſelves with a Glaſs of Brandy, we did the like, and being refreſh'd, mounted our Sledges, ſet our *Rain-Deer* a going, and Travell'd three Hours longer, when we perceiv'd a larger Village at the foot of a Mountain: The Huts were better built and cloſer together, and thither we haſtn'd to take up our Lodging that Night. VVe were oblig'd to divide our Company, for one Cottage would not hold us all. VVe met with the ſame reception from our Hoſts as we had had in *Lapland*; we gratify'd them with an end of Tobacco and a Cup of Brandy. Our Guides took care of our *Rain-Deer*, and we lay down to reſt on Bear-Skins. I diſtinguiſh one part of the Day from the

the other, by Night and Day, tho' really there was no Night at all, but I do it to make my ſelf the better underſtood by the Reader. VVe ſlept ſix or ſeven Hours, and then roſe to ſee if we could Trade with the Inhabitants of the Village. Our Guides inform'd them what our buſineſs was there, and that we would barter our Commodities for theirs. They preſently produc'd ſome *Wolf-Skins*, *White Fox-Skins*, two Dozen of *Ermines*, three hundred *Grey-Squirrels*, and ſeven pair of *Sables*. They did not care to deal for Tobacco, ſo much as the *Laplanders* did, nor as the *Borandians* dwelling on the Coaſts. They were not ſuch good Fellows, Hunting was their only Diverſion and Employment. In the Summer-time they eat their Meat freſh, boil'd or broil'd on the Coals; in VVinter they eat it dry'd, providing enough in Summer to laſt them the whole Seaſon. Their Manner of Drying it is thus; they cut it out in pieces, ſpread it on the tops of their Houſes, and leave it in the Sun. Their Huts are flat at top, cover'd with branches of Trees and Turf; they are very low, having no place but the Door for the Light to enter at: The Doors of their Huts are like the Mouth of an Oven. Theſe *Borandians*, as our Guides told us, change their Dwellings from time to time

like the *Kilops*. They live like Beaſts without any knowledge of Religion: They are ſtupid and ugly; their Shoes are made of the Bark of a Tree; their Stockings, Breeches, Caps and Coats, which come down below the Calves of their Legs, and are ty'd round their VVaſts with a Girdle four Inches broad, are all of white Bear-Skin, the Hair outward. One can't diſtinguiſh the VVomen from the Men, but by their Hair, which is twiſted and hangs down on their Shoulders; they are as dextrous at Hunting as the Men, and only carry a Stick, ſharp at one end, in their Hands; 'tis of a tough VVood, and ſerves them for a defenſive VVeapon. The Strings of their Bows are made only of the paring of a Tree; they hang a Quiver at their Backs, and a Stone, that will cut like a Razor, at their Girdles. VVe bought the Furs, the Inhabitants had to ſell, for Money and Copper, and order'd our *Rain-Deer* to be put to our Sledges, mounted them, and having drank each a good Glaſs of Brandy, which may be call'd the Liquor of Life in the North, we proceeded on our Journey. VVe ran eight or nine Hours before we came to any Habitation; at laſt our Guides ſpy'd three or four Huts, and turn'd our *Rain-Deer* up to them: VVe found no body in them; how-

however thither we went and refreſh'd our ſelves on our own Proviſions, while our Cattle baited on the Moſs which grew there in abundance : We reſted three Hours, and then mounted again to proceed on our Journey.

We travell'd fifteen Hours before we came to any Dwelling or ſaw any Humane Creature : When we had been ſo long on our way, we ſpy'd three Hunters riding before us ; we overtook them under a Hill : One of them was dreſt in a long Robe after the *Muſcovite*-Faſhion ; 'twas ty'd round his Waſt with a Girdle four Inches broad ; 'twas all Bear-Skin, the Hair outwards, and as white as Snow, the Edges black as a Coal : His Cap was like a Seamans, made of black *Fox-Skin* ; his Breeches and his Stockings were of *Rain-Deer* Skin ; his Shoes of *Fiſh-Skin*, ſomewhat like thoſe we ſaw at *Varanger*. The two others were dreſt as he was ; their Robes were of white *Bear-Skin*, the Hair outwards. They had each a Dozen of Furs at their Backs, *Bear-Skins*, *Wolf-Skins and white Fox-Skins*, ſome *Ermines* and very fine *Sables*, the Bears Tails hanging ſtill to the Skin. The firſt of them carry'd only a Dozen of *white Crows* and ſeven *Sables* hanging at his Girdle. When we came up near enough, one of our Guides ſtopt to talk to him : He lighted

out of his Sledge, and the other went into it: While our Accountant rode with him, we admir'd to ſee our *Borandian* leave us and this Man ſupply his room: Our Super-Cargo could not tell what to make of it. The Hunter travell'd with us above an Hour, and we had as bad luck as before in this uninhabited Country: We met with neither Houſe nor Man; at laſt as we drew near the brow of a high Mountain, we perceiv'd the Sea at a diſtance, and at the foot of the Mountain, ſeveral Houſes built cloſe together, which look'd like a little Town. Thither our *Rain-Deer* carry'd us; We alighted to repoſe our weary Limbs at that Mans Door who had taken our Guides place in one of our Sledges; we found he was a Man of Authority in the place, by the officiouſneſs of the Inhabitants to ſerve us as his Friends. The Name of the Village was *Vitzora*: The People that belong'd to it, as ſoon as they ſaw that Perſon in our Company, ran to help us out of our Sledges, and to unharneſs our *Rain-Deer*. He barter'd all his *Skins* with us for Tobacco and Brandy, except his Bear-Skins which we did not care to buy, and his *Sables* which he would not part with; indeed he durſt not ſell them. The Great Duke of *Muſcovy*, in whoſe Territories we were, and

and whom his Subjects call *Czar*, reſerves that Commodity to himſelf: Thoſe who ſell it without Licence from him, in any part of his Dominions, are ſeverely puniſh'd. He appoints certain Officers to take thoſe Furs of ſuch as have them. Thoſe Officers have Ware-houſes on purpoſe in ſeveral places of his Empire, and only they can trade in that Merchandiſe; If any one elſe ſells a *Sable-Skin*, 'tis by ſtealth and in ſecret, and thoſe that buy it muſt be careful how 'tis ſeen, for if the Officers we have mention'd, or the Governours of the Places that Strangers go thro', find any *Sable-Skin* or *-Skins* among their Goods, which were not bought of the proper Officer, all their Merchandiſe, will be ſeiz'd and condemn'd. Having dealt with this *Borandian* Gentleman, if any of that Country deſerve the name, for all the *Furs* he had by him that were to be ſold, he ſent two of his Servants about the Village to tell the Inhabitants, *That if they would bring us their Skins to his Houſe they might have Brandy and Tobacco for them, as their Maſter had had for his.* The *Borandians* of *Vitzora* were glad to hear of ſo good a Market; they brought us all their *Furs* immediately, and we gave them Tobacco and Brandy in exchange for them. We bought in this place fifteen hundred Skins of all ſorts,

and

and our Cargo being too great for a Sledge, we deſir'd our Landlord to do us the favour to lend us a Bark which he ſaid he had, and ſome of his Servants to go in it with one of our Seamen, who was a good Sailor and one we could truſt, to carry our Goods a Ship-board: Our Ship, 'tis true, lay above a hundred Leagues off, but the Sailor and the *Borandians* Servants, who were us'd to the Coaſt, could eaſily manage that ſmall Veſſel, and convey the Merchandiſe to our Companions, on the South-Coaſt of *Borandia*. The Gentleman agreed to lend us the Bark at ſuch a Price, and his Servants to help our Sailor; we paid him in Brandy and Tobacco, as current as ready Caſh at *Vitzora*. The Bark was built in the form of a *Gondola*, broad in the middle and ſharp at each end, 'twas all of Wood. There was no Iron-Geer nor Nails about it, it had a Fir-Tree Maſt in the middle, and a ſquare piece of courſe Cloth, the Thread of it wove of the rind of a certain Tree, ty'd to the Maſt, to ſerve for a Sail; the Cordage was of the ſame make as the Sail: The two Anchors were of Wood, and very heavy; the Cables that held them were made alſo of Ropes of the ſame rind as the other Cordage. He lent us two of his Servants to aſſiſt our Sailor, and when they were about

to

to put to Sea, he ſhew'd us privately thirty pair of *Sable-Skins*, which we bought with ready Money, clapt them aboard and ſent them away; we were glad we had got them ſo, for otherwiſe he would not have ſold them to us. The Bark being ready to ſail was a fair temptation, and ſeeing there was no likelihood of the Officers ſearching it, he let us have them. The Veſſel was to put off immediately, and there was no Officers near it to examine it. 'Twas a dangerous riſque had there been any Searchers at hand, for himſelf would have been Corporally puniſh'd, and he and all his Family ſent Slaves into *Siberia*.

Our Seaman and the two *Borandians* ſet ſail with our Merchandiſe, and our Super-Cargo and Accoutants fell to Drinking with the *Borandian* Gentleman; While they were making a Debauch, I went about the Town with our other two Seamen; I was pleas'd with its ſcituation between two Mountains, each of them almoſt a League high. All the Houſes were built and cover'd with Fiſh-Bones very artificially, the Crannies were every where ſtopt up with Moſs, as faſt as a Ship newly Caulk'd, and above all, Turf was laid handſomely in ſome places that were moſt expos'd to the Wind, which had no paſſage into the

Houſes

Houſes except at the Doors, which were like Ovens Mouths, as in other places of *Borandia*, or at the top of the Houſes, where there were Lattices or Windows for the Light to enter. I ſaw abundance of Women and Children at work, ſome making Fiſhing-Nets of the rind of Trees, others were making of Sails, which look'd like fine Mats; others uſing their Hatchets; others Knives making the Points for Darts or Arrows of Fiſh-Bones; others were ſowing Bear-Skin Habits, the Thread they us'd was wove of the rind of a Tree; their Needles were of Fiſh-Bones. All of them are Ugly, Little, Flat-Nos'd and Swarthy.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

The Author Travels from Vitzora *in* Borandia, *to* Petzora *in* Muſcovy: *Of the Trade of that Province; his Journey into* Siberia, *part of* Muſcovy *in* Aſia: *He meets with five Gentlemen baniſh'd by the* Czar *for ſelling Sables. Their Adventures and Miſeries.*

WHen we return'd to our Lodging, we conſulted with our Super-Cargo and Accountants what we had beſt to do. Our Commodities were not half diſpos'd of, and we were in a Country that was full of Furs: The farther we went the plenty was the greater, and conſequently the Market the more incouraging. We had a great deal of ready Caſh, and our Commiſſion being as general as our Captains, who were to go on a Trading Voyage to the North, whither they thought fit for the ſervice of the Company. We reſolv'd to proceed as

as long as we found the Trade to be good. We ſent our Guides back with the *Rain-Deer*, and Letters to our Captains to acquaint them with our intentions, and give them an account of our ſucceſs. We then hir'd a Bark to carry us to *Petzora*, the Capital City of a Principality of the ſame name, on the North-Coaſt of the *Muſcovite* Sea. Our Landlord got us a ſmall Veſſel and two Men; we embark'd aboard it with our Cargo, and by the help of an Eaſterly VVind coaſted a long Shoar, till we arriv'd at *Petzora*; we got there in fifteen Hours. The City is not very big, 'tis ſeated on the Coaſt, and gives name to the Sea, as well as the Province about it. VVe went to wait on the Governour at the Caſtle. He aſſumes that Title, tho' in reality he is no more than a Collector of the Cuſtoms. Indeed all the Czars Governors are ſuch ſort of Perſons, for there are few Noblemen or Gentlemen in *Muſcovy*; they are all made Uncivil and Jealous, Qualities that are incompatible with Nobility. This Governour was a *Muſcovite*; he was dreſt after the Faſhion of his Country in a Robe of a Violet-Colour Cloth with a mixture of red. He gave us ſome excellent Methegelin, which went down very pleaſantly, and was as ſweet and racy as Sack. After

ter

that we had Brandy and Ginger-bread, the common Collation in *Muſcovy*. Knowing he had the charge of the Czars Sables, we ask'd him, *If he would ſell us ſome*? He ſaid *He would*, inquiring how many we wanted? VVe anſwer'd, *All he had, if he would let us have a Penniworth.* He then carry'd us to the VVarehouſe, where there were five Zimmers, each Zimmer 50 Pair, among which there were two Zimmers of the fineſt I ever ſaw, as black as Jet, for which we paid him five hundred Ducats, and we had the other three Zimmers for eight hundred Crowns or four hundred Ducats.

VVe bought all the Skins he had: They were Seal'd with the Czars Arms. After we had paid him his Money, he would treat us again at the Caſtle; he order'd two Boats to Sea preſently to get ſome freſh Fiſh for us; he kill'd a young *Rain-Deer*, and roaſted ſome VVild-Fowl that his Servants had juſt brought in. VVe had a noble Entertainment of Fiſh and Fowl, and young *Rain-Deer* Veniſon, which is good Meat. VVe drank Brandy and Metheglin eight Hours together, and the Fumes had got up into my Head ſooner, had I not ever now and then eat a *Muſcovite*-Bisket, the beſt Bread in the North. The Governour and his Gueſts at laſt began to be top-heavy, and

and we all lay down to reſt on VVhite Bear-Skins, for he had no Bed to Lodge us in.

VVe ſlept ſix or ſeven Hours and then roſe. Our Hoſt preſented us each at our up-riſing with a brimmer of Brandy. VVe then went about the Town to try if there was any Trade to be driven with the Inhabitants. The Governour order'd one of his Under-Officers to accompany us, and we bought of ſeveral People two thouſand *Grey-Squirrels*, four Dozen of *Ermines*, five hundred *Fox-Skins*, the greateſt part of them as VVhite as Snow, ſix-ſcore of *White-Wolf-Skins*, two hundred *Martens*, of a Greyiſh Colour; all of them coſt four hundred Ducats. VVe oblig'd them to take it out half in Copper, becauſe it incumber'd us, and half in Caſh. VVe went back to the Caſtle, whither we ſent our Merchandiſe, and where we pack'd it up in Bales. The Packing-Cloth was made of the ſame ſort of Stuff as the Sails of the Bark we ſent to our Ships. Our Goods being thus taken care of, we reſolv'd that one of our Accountants ſhould return with them to our Ships. To that end we entreated our Hoſt, the Governour, to furniſh us with a Bark, which he did, and we hir'd three *Borandians* to aſſiſt the Accountant in his Voyage, the Governour paſſing his Word for them,

them, that they ſhould be truſty and do us no wrong. For the hire of the Bark and the *Borandians* Wages, we paid him ten Ducats more, and preſented the *Borandians* with ſome ends of Tobacco: The Governour engag'd to ſatisfie them farther for their trouble when they came back.

Our Accountant embarking ſet Sail, the Wind at Eaſt-South-Eaſt; and we fell again to Drinking with our Hoſt the Governour. The Gentleman who had entertain'd us at *Vitzora*, accompany'd us to *Petzora*, and drank ſo hard that I could not imagine where he found ſtowage for ſo much Brandy and Metheglin as he ſwallow'd. We continu'd Tipling four Hours, and then lay down according to Cuſtom, on Bear-Skins, to repoſe our ſelves.

As ſoon as we awoke, our Super-Cargo deſir'd the Governour of *Petzora* to hire us ſome *Rain-Deer* to carry us into *Siberia*, a Province which ſome Geographers place in *Europe* and others in *Aſia*. He furniſh'd us with ſeven *Rain-Deer* and ſeven Sledges, one for our Super-Cargo, one for our other Accountant, one for my ſelf, two for our two Seamen, one for our Guide, and the other to load our Tobacco and Brandy. The Proviſions he ſupply'd us with were to laſt till we arriv'd

at *Papinowgorod*, another City in the Province of *Petzora*, on the borders of *Siberia*. Our Factor took what Money we had left with him, and the ſeven *Rain-Deer* being put to the ſeven Sledges, the Governour order'd another to be got ready for one of his Domeſticks, whom he commanded to wait upon us ſeveral Leagues on our way, to a Village where we were to change our *Rain-Deer*, and give 'em to the Governours Servant to carry back; for all which he was to have four Ducats. He would not let us go till we had drank five or ſix Glaſſes of Brandy at parting. We gave both him and our Hoſt of *Vitzora* hearty thanks for their kind Entertainment, and then got into our Sledges: We bid our two Hoſts adieu, and following the courſe of the River, whoſe Name (I have forgot) we proceeded on our Journey with the ſame ſpeed as in other places, where we Travell'd in Sledges. The ways were very difficult to paſs, we had no beaten Road, and were four Hours before we could ſee any Living Creature; at laſt we met four white Bears, of an exceſſive bigneſs; they croſt our way, and ſeeing us, fled into a Wood. Two Hours after we came to a Village, conſiſting of ſeven or eight Cottages. There was no Body in them, the Inhabitants being all gone a Hunting. We

We alighted out of our Sledges, to bait a little on the Proviſions we brought with us: While we were eating, five or ſix Men, with their Wives and Children, return'd from Hunting, which it ſeems had been very lucky to them, for they brought in with them ſix Bear-Skins, four Wolf-Skins, a couple of Ermines, and eight Sables. The People of the Place were ſurpriz'd to ſee us there, and would have fled from us, had not the Governour of *Petzora*'s Servant aſſured them we were Friends and Merchants bound for *Papinowgorod*. When they underſtood we were Traders, they came up to us, and view'd us narrowly: They wonder'd to ſee ſo many Strangers in a place ſo much unfrequented: They were aſtoniſh'd at our way of Dreſs, our Looks and Shape, as alſo at our Language ſo different from theirs, and ſo unintelligible to them: However we dealt with them by the aſſiſtance of our Interpreter; we bought all the Skins that they dar'd to ſell us, and they lent us *Rain-Deer* and Sledges to carry us as far as the mouth of the River of *Papinowgorod*.

When we parted from them we left the Courſe of the River of *Petzora*, and proceeded to that of *Papinowgorod*. The ways were almoſt unpaſſable, yet with much difficulty and fatigue, our *Rain-*

Deer drew us over Mountains and Valleys, thro' Woods and Foreſts for three Hours, before we met with Man, Woman, Child or Habitation. When we had Travell'd ſo long, and approach'd near a thick Wood, we ſpy'd five Men, array'd in white Bear-Skin Robes after the *Muſcovite*-Faſhion; each of 'em had a Fuſee on his Shoulder, a Pouch on one ſide, and a Knife and Sheath on the other, like the *Borandian* Huntſmen. They ſeem'd to make up towards us, for which reaſon we ſtop'd to ſee who they were. Our Guide, who underſtood the management of *Rain-Deer*, immediately ſtop'd them, and by that time the five Men were advanc'd ſo near us, that we could hear them. One of them perceiving we were Strangers, bid us *Good Morrow* in the *German* Language, wiſhing, *they were as free as we were.* Our Super-Cargo, who was a Native of the *Lower-Saxony*, hearing him talk his own Tongue, ask'd him *What Countryman he was?* The Man anſwer'd him to his ſatisfaction, and entring into a longer Converſation, they recollected ſeveral things in their Minds, by which they underſtood that they had formerly been intimately acquainted. Our Super-Cargo alighted out of his Sledge, embrac'd him, and demanded how he came there? The Man reply'd, *He was*

one

one of thoſe whom the Grand King, or Czar, had lately baniſh'd for Hunting Sables. This is a Crime which is puniſh'd with Baniſhment, and that in *Muſcovy* ſupplies the place of the Gallies in *France*: Some are baniſh'd for ten Years, ſome for ſix, ſome for three, ſome for more, and ſome for leſs, after which they have their liberty to go where they pleaſe. The more I look'd on one of the five Men, the more I thought I had ſeen him before, and alighted out of my Sledge to ſatisfie my Curioſity. As ſoon as I was on the Ground the Man, who remember'd me better than I did him, ran to me and embrac'd me, ſighing and asking me in the *French* Tongue *Whence I came, and whither I went?* I was ſomewhat ſurpriz'd at it, becauſe I could not yet call to Mind who he was. His Habit had ſtrangely alter'd him, his Beard was long, and his Head bald; beſides he was ſo fall'n away he was nothing but Skin and Bones. Seeing I could not yet recollect where I had known him, he told me his Name, and that he had drank very often with me at *Stockholm.* I then remember'd, that indeed he was the Man to whom I had been very much oblig'd, for the many Civilities I had receiv'd from him in *Sweden.* He was a Gentleman by Birth, a *Lorainer*, and was Lieutenant-Collonel of a Regi-

ment of *Muſcovite* Horſe: He would feign have perſwaded me to go with him to *Moſcow*, promiſing to procure me an Honourable and Profitable Place in the Service of the Czar; but I did not think fit to accept of his Propoſal. The fine appearance he made at that time, the reſpect that every one paid him, as well on account of his Eſtate, for he was Rich, as for the Poſt he enjoy'd, and the Character he bore of a Man of Courage and Honour, and the miſerable Condition I now ſaw him in, made me Sigh; when I embrac'd him again with extraordinary Affection and Tenderneſs, asking him *What was the occaſion of his Diſgrace?* He anſwer'd, *The* Czar *ſuſpected he had not been ſo zealous in his Service as he might have been, and for that reaſon only, baniſh'd him to* Siberia *for three Years: That he was to endure Miſeries which were not to be expreſt; beſides the dangers to which all Baniſh'd Perſons are expos'd, in Hunting Wild-Beaſts for their ſubſiſtance; as likewiſe Hunger and the rigour of the Seaſon, which they were forc'd to ſuffer, and none durſt relieve them. He ſaid they were almoſt every Day attack'd by Wild-Beaſts which they met in Herds, ſeeking for Paſture, and that they had often much ado to defend themſelves:* And further, *If they did not each of them catch ſuch a number of* Sables *as they were condemn'd*

demn'd to furniſh the Czars Officers with, they were each of 'em Laſh'd with a Whip made of Leathern Thongs, thick and hard, on their Naked Backs, and ſometimes over their whole Bodies, till they were all in a gore Blood. Our Super-Cargo's Acquaintance told him the ſame Story: So did the other three, who ſpoke the *German* and *French* Tongues tollerably well: One of them had been Receiver-General of the Czars Revenue in one of his Provinces, the other had been a Major-General, and the other a Man of Note. They all deplor'd their Misfortune, aſſuring us that when the time of their Baniſhment was out, they would get far enough out of the Czars power. We were extreamly touch'd with the relation of their miſerable Condition: We ſate down on the Moſs, took out the beſt Proviſions we had, and deſir'd them to take part of it. We offer'd them our help to make their Eſcapes, but they told us 'twas impracticable, for that they were known to all the Governours of the Forts and Places thro' which they and we muſt neceſſarily paſs; and in caſe they ſhould be taken, all our and their Lives muſt pay for their attempt to get off; that Death would certainly be our Puniſhment and theirs, and the moſt cruel Death which boundleſs Power and Northern Barbarity could inflict. This

encreas'd our concern for thoſe poor unfortunate Gentlemen: We wept all of us heartily at the ſad ſight of what they ſuffer'd, and the Idea of what they were ſtill to ſuffer. We could not think of parting preſently with Perſons in their diſconſolate State; we had ſeen them when Fortune ſmil'd on them, at leaſt on ſome of them; we had been their Friends, and we thought it would have been cruel to leave them without endeavouring to render a Day or two of the diſmal time they were to paſs, pleaſant to them: The Society of ſuch, as they had formerly had a friendſhip for, would contribute towards eaſing them a little of the load of Grief that hung heavy on their Hearts. We told them what we wiſh'd, and that we were loath to part ſo ſoon. Our Trade was not in ſo much haſt, conſidering the two large parcels of Goods we had already ſent to our Companions in the Voyage, as to hinder us ſpending a Day or two with Men in their Circumſtances, whom we equally lov'd and eſteem'd. The meeting them in ſuch a Place, and in ſo ſad a Condition had ſomething Romantick in it; and as much as we were Merchants we had more of Hero's in us, than to fly from our Friends in Adverſity, without taking a few Days to condole with them, and

endeavour to alienate their ſorrows by Pity and Commiſeration. Beſides theſe conſiderations I had another, my deſign in the beginning of my Voyage was more to make Obſervations on the North-Parts of the World, than to reap any advantage by it. I had formerly made more beneficial Voyages to the *Indies* and *Africk*, than any thing I could propoſe to my ſelf by Travelling into the North, but having ſeen thoſe two parts of the World, I had a Curioſity to viſit that in which I was now Trading; and to inform my ſelf of the Cuſtoms and Manners of a People, leſs known to us than the *Indians* in the Eaſt and Weſt, tho' they are at a greater diſtance from us. I knew the Gentleman of *Lorrain* to be a ſenſible Man, who had liv'd a long time in *Muſcovy*, underſtood the State of the Empire, and the Court of the Czar as well as any Man, and intending to communicate my own Obſervations to the World, I thought I could not do better than to compleat the Readers ſatisfaction, by giving him his, which would make my Account of the North compleat: Wherefore I reſolv'd to ſtay a Day or two with him and his poor Brethren in Adverſity, and learn of him what he could inform me of the more noted, and more populous part of *Muſcovy*, of the City of *Moſtow*, and

and the Czars Court. Our buſineſs oblig'd us to keep as near the Coaſts as poſſible, and the Countries that lay near the Sea came within my own knowledge, but the Inland Provinces were out of our way, and we had no pretence to viſit them, my Companions Travelling for Profit and not for Pleaſure. Our unhappy Friends rejoyc'd mightily at our offers to ſpend ſome Hours with them: To encourage us they told us, that they had built themſelves five little Huts in the Wood which they came out of, where each of them retir'd when he choſe to be alone; that there was room enough to entertain us all, and if we would be ſo kind as to go thither with them, they ſhould be infinitely oblig'd to us. They knew our buſineſs, and we ſhould not loſe our time: All the Skins they had were at our ſervice, except the *Sables*, which they were forc'd to reſerve for the Czar; but they were little to be valu'd in reſpect of the Joy they ſhould have in our Company. They ſaid the very remembrance of the happy Hours they ſpent with us in their profound Solitude, would make many future Months glide on the more ſweetly. Our Super-Cargo and I conſented to ſtay with them out of reſpect, as the reſt of our Company did out of hopes of Profit, hearing them offer to give

give us their Furs. The baniſh'd Men told us we muſt Travel ſome ſcores of Leagues before we could meet with a convenient Market for our Commodities; we readily agreed to the propoſal they made us. When we had refreſh'd our ſelves on our own Proviſions, we order'd our Guide to unharneſs our *Rain-Deer*; and convey'd our Goods into the Huts the Gentlemen had built to defend them from the Weather. Their Neceſity made them Ingenious, and a thing could not be better contriv'd, either for Pleaſure or Convenience in ſo wretched a Place. They were built of Fir higher than any we had ſeen in our Travels. There were two or three Rooms in each of them, and Lattices to let in the Light at the ſide. They were each ſhaded by a Tuft of Trees, and Pav'd with broad Fiſh-Bones ſo artificially, that they look'd as if the Floors were inlaid with Ivory: They had digg'd a Trench round them, and Palliſado'd the Circumference of the Ground, on which they were built, with ſtrong Poſts, which were joyn'd together by croſs Sticks of tough Wood, and on the top were ſpikes of Fiſh-Bones. By this means, when the Gate that was the entrance into it was ſhut, they were ſafe againſt the Inſults of Wild-Beaſts, and as ſecure as in a fortify'd Place. They had

all

all ſorts of Hunting and Fiſhing Tackle' ſtore of Metheglin, Bisket, and ſalted *Rain-Deer* Veniſon. The *Lorainer* was a Temperate Man, but the others lov'd Drinking, ſo they and my Companions fell to it. I always abhor'd the Debauches we were forc'd to make in the North, and was very glad I had an excuſe to avoid Tipling now. My Friend and I withdrew to converſe together, and the Company perceiving we were old Acquaintance, permitted us to do ſo. We retir'd into his Hut, and left the reſt with the *Saxon* in his, where they drank away ſorrow at that time, and after ſix or ſeven Hours ſpent over Brandy and Tobacco, they all lay down on Bear-Skins, to take their reſt. The *Lorainer* and I, in the mean time, enter'd into a Diſcourſe on his own Adventures: He told me how he intended to return home after his time of Exile was expir'd, and how I might hear of him in *France*. Our Converſation was tender and pleaſant, it ran partly on our former Acquaintance, and partly on the wildneſs of the Country, and the Barbarity of the Inhabitants; Upon which I took occaſion to deſire him to communicate to me the Obſervations he had made on the Court, Country, and Cuſtoms of *Muſcovy*, telling him I intended to Publiſh my *Voyage to the North*, and

and wanted only ſome Account of the Inland Provinces to render it, in ſome meaſure, perfect. He reply'd, *He was loath to ſpend any of the little time we had to be together, on ſo general a Subject; but if I thought his Reflections and Remarks would be of any uſe to me, he would give me the Memoirs he collected, when he came firſt into* Muſcovy, *for his private ſatisfaction. He could not recommend them to me, as things that did not require to be carefully digeſted and methodiz'd, but he aſſur'd me the Obſervations were as juſt and entertaining as any he had been able to make ſince, in fifteen or ſixteen Years reſidence in the Country.* He then went to a Cheſt he had in a Corner of an Inner Room, and took out about twenty Sheets of Paper, containing the ſubſtance of what I incert in the following Pages, relating to the Manners and Polity of the *Ruſſians*, as alſo the account I give of *Siberia*, which I took entirely from his Memoirs. I would feign have excuſed my ſelf and not accepted his Preſent, believing he could finiſh his Work, and make it uſeful for the Publick, with more ſucceſs than I could. But he oblig'd me to take the Memoirs, ſaying, *The Things in it were now ſo common to him, that he needed no Remembrancer, and his ſufferings had given him ſuch a diſguſt to the Country, that he ſhould never more have*

tily, and wiſh'd 'em patience to endure their ſufferings, and a happy deliverance out of them, and ſaluting them all round we wept reciprocally.

Our *Rain-Deer* and Sledges being got ready, we mounted and bid them all Adieu, the like did the Gentlemen to us. Our *Rain-Deer*, at our Guides ſignal, ran away with us, and the unfortunate Exiles went to their Huts.

Here I think it proper to incert the Account of *Muſcovy*, and the *Muſcovites*, of the City of *Moſcow*, the Court of the Czar, and of the Province of *Siberia*, as I gather'd it from the Memoirs given me by the *Lorainer* we met in the Woods in the Province of *Petzora*, ſubject to the Grand King or Czar of *Muſcovy*.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Nature of the Ruſſians: *Their Contempt of the Sciences. Of their Clergy, their Liturgy, their Churches, Devotion, Marriages, and their Cruelty to their Wives. Of the* Czariſſa *or Empreſs, the manner of the* Czars *chooſing a Wife; and of the Emperors Children.*

THE Territories of the Czar or Emperor of *Ruſſia* are ſo little known, that there have been few Deſcriptions of them worth Reading, which proceeds from the little Commerce there is between his Dominions and other Parts of *Europe*; and indeed between ſome of his Provinces with the other. His Country is the largeſt in *Europe*, beſides what he poſſeſſes in *Aſia*; but moſt of it is thinly peopled, and being uninhabited in many Places, 'tis conſequently unfrequented. By this means Travellers never give themſelves

ſelves the trouble to go far beyond the Coaſts, or the Province of *Moſcow*; and the Czars Subjects are ſo illiterate they can give no Account of things, or ſo ignorant, that they know as little of their own Country as thoſe that were never in it. I found very few Obſervations on the Geographical Part of *Muſcovy* among my Friends Papers, but ſeveral Remarks on the Cuſtoms and Religion of the *Muſcovites*, with which I believe the Reader will be diverted, for they were made by a Gentleman who had more opportunities of informing himſelf, than ever any Man of his Capacity had before him. Every Body that Travels into *Muſcovy* with deſign to ſatisfie their Curioſity, about the Manners and Polity, Eccleſiaſtical and Civil, of the *Muſcovites*, will meet with ſo many difficulties, that they will hardly have Patience to ſurmount them. The People of *Ruſſia* are naturally jealous and miſtruſtful: They have no knowledge of the World, and but very little in any kind of Affairs, either Spiritual or Temporal; wherefore they ſuſpect all that make any Inquiries into the State of their Government or Religion.

Printing was brought into *Muſcovy* in the Year 1560, and the Czar then reigning, erected a Colledge for Profeſſors to teach

teach Grammar and the *Latine* Tongue, but it came to nothing in a few Years. The Prieſts, the moſt ignorant illiterate Creatures that ever aſſum'd that Office, ruin'd it, for fear it might in time ruin them. Theſe Prieſts are only Laicks of good Lives and Converſations, who are for that reaſon choſen into the Prieſthood. The occaſion of the *Muſcovites* embracing the Chriſtian Religion, was from the Prayers of a Prieſt of *Chioff*, who Praying to Almighty God for the Duke, who was dangerouſly ill, his Prayers were heard, and that Prince miraculouſly recover'd to his Health.

Their Liturgy is taken from that of the *Greeks*, 'tis written in the *Sclavonian* Language, the knowledge of which is as rare among them, as that of the *Latine* among the Roman-Catholicks.

They imitate the *Greeks* in the manner of building their Churches: They have Pictures in them, and formerly had Images, richly adorn'd with Jewels and other coſtly Ornaments; but this is not ſuffer'd now, all ſorts of Sculptures being forbidden, and they look upon the Worſhip rendred them by the Papiſts to be Idolatry.

They don't kneel at their Prayers, they proſtrate themſelves on the Ground. On the Eve of certain Feaſts

celebrated among them, they ſpend the whole Night at Church in their Devotions: They often throw themſelves on the Floor, ſign themſelves with the ſign of the Croſs, and beat their Heads againſt the Ground. Amidſt the ſeveral parts of their Services, there are Intervals in which they diſcourſe of their Wordly Affairs. The Emperor ſeldom miſſes aſſiſting at the Publick Worſhip: He is generally attended by the whole Court: He diſpatches Buſineſs at Church, and if any of the Courtiers are not preſent he ſeverely reprimands them.

On *Whitſunday* their Churches are fill'd with Maple-Boughs, which the *Ruſſians* miſtake for Sycamore, on which they proſtrate themſelves, verily believing that the Holy Ghoſt deſcends on thoſe Boughs, as Manna fell on the Leaves of Oak in the Deſart.

Muſical Inſtruments are not us'd in Churches. The laſt Patriarch aboliſh'd that Cuſtom.

Their Prayers which are perform'd three Hours after Sun-riſing, are call'd *Obedni*, thoſe that are made after Sun-ſet are call'd *Vacherny*, and thoſe an Hour after Mid-night *Zaoutrinys*.

Their

Their *Obedni* or Morning-Prayer is

Have mercy upon me, O Lord! according to thy loving kindneſs, and blot out my tranſgreſſion, according to the greatneſs and multitude of thy Bounties.

Their *Vacherny* or Evening-Prayer is

O Lord, hear my Prayer when I call upon thee, and let my Cry come unto thee.

Their *Zaoutrinys* or Prayer an Hour after Mid-night is.

We put our truſt in Chriſt our Saviour, and all our hope is in him.

They repeat the *Miſerere*, which they call *Hoſpody Pomelée*, a hundred times over, and that Prieſt who can repeat it oftneſt in a Breath is reckon'd the beſt Man among 'em.

Five or ſix of them will read aloud together, the one a Chapter, the other a Pſalm, the third a Prayer, and the reſt ſo many more different things with noiſe and confuſion.

Every Pariſh-Prieſt is call'd *Pope* or *Father*, as *Pope John*, *Pope Peter*; a Biſhop is ſtil'd a *Metropolitan*, and the Chief-Prieſt

Prieſt *Proto-Pope*. The Pariſh Prieſts are commonly Cloath'd in Red Veſtments; ſome wear Green, and others Blew, according to their ſeveral fancies. The form of their Garments is diſtinguiſh'd from that of Laymen, by two little pieces of Stuff ſow'd on each Breaſt. They wear a red Leather Cap on their bald Pates, and that's all the difference between their Dreſs and the Laity. The Hair of their Heads and Beards is never ſhav'd, only the Crown of their Heads which is always ſhorn. They muſt have Wives, but according to the Apoſtle St. *Paul*'s rule, no Prieſt is allow'd to have more than one during his whole Life. Thus their Prieſthood depends on their Wives, and when they die it ceaſes, for which reaſon they Marry young, that they may have a Benefice early, and uſe their Wives better than other Men. Their Wives Garments are diſtinguiſh'd like their Husbands, by two little pieces of Stuff ſow'd on each Breaſt. Their manner of Baptiſm is much like that of the Roman-Catholicks, except that they always dip the Children they Baptiſe quite under Water.

The Cuſtom of buying Foreigners on purpoſe to oblige them to turn Chriſtians, which was very much practic'd by them formerly, is now out of uſe. When any

any Man, either Proteſtant or Papiſt, renounces his own Religion to embrace the *Ruſſian*, he muſt renounce his firſt Baptiſm, his Father and Mother, and ſpit three times over his Shoulder. Some Ancient Inhabitants of the Country have obſerv'd, that of two hundred *Engliſh*, *Scotch* and *Dutch*, who have made profeſſion of the *Ruſſian* Religion, hardly one of 'em has dy'd a Natural Death.

The greateſt part of the Marriages in *Muſcovy* are brought about by third Perſons, and without much Solemnity. Five or ſix of the young Womans Friends who is to be Married, examine her ſtark Naked, before ſhe is further engag'd in the matter, to ſee if ſhe has any bodily Infirmity, and if they find any, they do what they can to cure it. As for the young Man, he never ſees her perhaps till he meets her in the Chamber where the Marriage is to be Conſummated.

The Nuptial Ceremonies are not very great, a few Perſons of both Sexes wait on the Bride, about three a Clock in the Afternoon, to Church: When the Prieſt has done his Office, the *Panama* or Sexton throws Hops on her, and wiſhes that ſhe may be as fruitful as that Plant. Another Officer of the Church, cloath'd in Goat-Skin, the Wool outwards, accom-

panies her home, praying all the way that ſhe may have as many Children as there are Hairs on his Habit.

Young Men lead the Bridegroom home, and old Women the Bride, who is Veil'd, ſo that nothing of her Perſon is to be ſeen. The Pariſh-Prieſt carries the Croſs before her to her Husbands Houſe.

The new Marry'd Couple ſit down at Table together; ſometimes they have Bread and Salt laid before them, but they don't eat a bit. In the mean time a Chorus of Boys and Girls ſing an Epithalamium or Wedding-Song, ſo lewd and impudent, that 'tis a ſhame to repeat it.

When this Ceremony is over, an old Woman and a Prieſt conduct the Bride and Bridegroom to their Chamber, where the old Woman adviſes the Bride to be loving and obedient to her Husband, and the Bridegroom to be kind to his Wife.

The Bridegroom in one of his Buſkins has a Whip, and in the other a Jewel or Purſe of Money: He commands the Bride to pull 'em off, and if it happens ſhe lights upon that Buskin firſt where the Jewel or Purſe of Money is, he gives it to her, which is look'd on as a happy Omen for the Wife; but 'tis reckon'd unlucky for her to pull off that Buskin firſt in which the Whip is, and the Bride-

groom

groom gives her a Laſh with it, to puniſh her for it, as a token of the Treatment ſhe is like to meet with. When this is done, they are ſhut up in a Chamber together for two Hours. Then the old Woman goes in and examines if the ſigns of Virginity are apparent, and in ſuch caſe, ſhe ties up her Hair in Treſſes, that before hung looſe about her Shoulders, and goes to her Parents to demand the *Albricia* or Marriage-Portion.

To keep the Chambers warm in *Ruſſia*, they are cover'd with Earth two foot deep, but when a Couple is newly married, that Earth is taken away from the place where the Marriage is conſummated; for Earth being an Image of Mortality, the *Muſcovites* think 'tis not proper for the Man or Woman to have it in their Thoughts at that time.

The Children of the *Ruſſians*, young Men or Maids, dare not refuſe Husbands or Wives propos'd to 'em by their Parents, nor thoſe that depend on any great Man, thoſe deſign'd for them by their Superiour. *Boris Juanoidg Moriſo*, the ſecond Perſon in the Empire, having reſolv'd to Marry one of his Friends to a rich Woman, a *Dutch-Woman* born, who had embrac'd the *Ruſſian* Religion, the Widow went to *Boris*'s Wife, Siſter to the Empreſs, threw her ſelf at her Feet,

and

and pray'd her to prevail with her Husband not to put ſuch a conſtraint upon her Inclination, nor oblige her to break a Vow ſhe had made never to Marry again. All her Prayers and Tears were ineffectual: *Boris*'s Wife reply'd, *What would you* Biſcheſt, *as much as to ſay*, diſhonour *my Husband ſo far as to refuſe one that he offers you, and make him worſe than his Word to his Friend.*

The manner of the *Ruſſians* uſing their Wives, is very ſevere and inhumane, tho' 'tis much leſs now than 'twas formerly. Four or five Years after my Friend came into *Muſcovy*, a Tradeſman in *Moſcow*, after having beaten his Wife unmercifully, forc'd her to put on a Smock dipt in Brandy, to which he ſet Fire and burnt her to Death.

What is more ſtrange even than his Barbarity is, that no Body proſecuted him for his Wives Murder. It ſeems there is no Law in *Ruſſia* to puniſh a Man for killing his Wife, if 'twas in Correction. Some of theſe Barbarians tie up their Wives by the Hair of their Head, ſtrip 'em ſtark Naked, and whip 'em till they are almoſt Dead.

'Tis true they never chaſtiſe them ſo ſeverely, unleſs it be for Adultery or Drunkenneſs, and indeed 'tis very ſeldom now a-days that they deal ſo at all by

by them. The Fathers of the young Women who are Marry'd, now take the neceſſary Precautions to prevent their Daughters being ſo ill us'd. They oblige their Husbands by Marriage-Articles to treat them according to their Quality, to be tender to them, to maintain them with good Victuals and good Drink, not to whip them, nor ſcratch, nor kick them. That Woman who kills her Husband is bury'd alive, all but her Head, and ſo left to expire in that miſerable condition.

There is ſeldom any Marriage celebrated in *Muſcovy*, eſpecially among Perſons of Rank, without ſome Conjuring and uſing Charms. The Friars and Nuns are accus'd as the moſt guilty of this wicked Practice, which 'tis ſaid, they ſtudy in their Solitude. My Friend writes, that he has ſeen a Man come out of the Wedding-Chamber like a Mad-man, taring his Hair and crying *He was undone and bewitch'd.* The Cure in theſe Caſes is to apply to ſome Witches of *White-Ruſſia*, commonly call'd *White-Magicians*, who for a ſmall matter of Money, diſſolve the Charm, and untie the Knot that others had ty'd. This Man was ſo ſerv'd, ſo diſtemper'd, and ſo cur'd.

The

The *Muſcovite* Canon forbids any Man to have Conjugal Commerce with his Wife, three Days in the VVeek, as *Munday*, *Wedneſday* and *Friday*: Thoſe who break this Law muſt bath themſelves before they enter the Church Door. No Man is admitted into the Church that has had two VVives, every ſuch Perſon muſt ſtay in the Porch, and he who Marries a third time is Excommunicated.

If a Woman is barren, a Man may do what he can to perſwade her to retire into a Convent willingly, and if ſhe will not he may beat her till ſhe gives her conſent to it.

'Tis reported that the laſt Empreſs would have been ſhut up in a Monaſtery had ſhe not at laſt brought forth the *Czaroidge* or Prince-Royal, who was born 9 Years ago, on the 2*d*. of *June*, 1661. The Empreſs had ſeveral Daughters, but that would not have excus'd her, unleſs ſhe had had a Son and Heir.

VVhen the Czar of *Muſcovy* is willing to Marry, there are ſeveral Young and Beautiful Ladies preſented to him, out of which he generally chooſes one to be his VVife: The laſt Czar on this occaſion, made choice of a young Lady who was not at all lik'd by *Boris Juanoidg*, the

the Reigning Favourite and Miniſter. This Lord would feign have had his Maſter accept of a VVife of his chooſing, and endeavour'd to ſet him againſt the Lady he had himſelf choſen. He propos'd to him the Daughter of *Eliah Daneloidg*, a Man of obſcure Birth, who had got into ſome Credit by means of a good Eſtate left him by his Unkle, one *Grammatin* Chancellor of the Ambaſſadors Office. The young Gentlewomans Name was *Mary*, ſhe was not extraordinary Handſome, but ſhe was VVitty and Cunning, Modeſt and Devout, at leaſt in appearance. *Boris* thought if ſhe was advanc'd to the Emperors Bed by his procurement, ſhe would be govern'd by him, and his favour with the Czar made his hopes the more probable: He intended to Marry the younger Siſter himſelf, to ſtrengthen his Intereſts by that Allyance. The Propoſal he made to the Emperor was not at firſt approv'd of; he was very much troubled at it, but thought it would be his ſafeſt way to diſſemble his diſcontent, and knowing that the Emperors Inclination for the young Lady he had choſen, was too powerful for him to reſiſt openly, and that it might perhaps irritate him if he diſcover'd his averſion for the Match, he reſolv'd to break it off by Treachery,

Treachery. To prevent any ſuſpicion of his deſigns, he brib'd the VVomen that were according to Cuſtom to preſent her with the Crown, and they ty'd the young Ladies Hair ſo hard, that ſhe fell down into a Swoon; the VVomen gave out that ſhe had the Falling-Sickneſs. Her Father who brought her was ſeiz'd, accus'd of Treaſon, whip'd and baniſh'd into *Siberia*. The Gentlewoman when ſhe came to her ſelf, found ſhe was a vaſt diſtance from the Throne, to which a few Minutes before ſhe was ſo near: However, ſhe valu'd her ſelf ſo much on the Emperors choice of her, that ſhe would never afterwards Marry, tho' ſeveral beneficial Matches were offer'd her. She was not troubled with the Falling-Sickneſs any more. The Ring and Pocket-Handkerchief the Czar gave her, ſhe always kept as a Token of her preference in his favour, tho' of ſo ſhort duration. VVhen the Emperor underſtood 'twas only an accident occaſion'd by the tying of her Hair too ſtrait, he was very much troubled at it, and aſſign'd her a conſiderable Penſion to make amends for her loſs of a Crown, and the ill uſage her Father had ſuffer'd on her account.

Boris prevail'd with him to Marry *Daneloidg*'s Daughter, to which he was the rather induc'd, becauſe he was afraid of being

being Bewitch'd if he refus'd, and the Favourite Marry'd *Anne* the *Czariſſa*'s Siſter, as he intended to do if the Czar conſented to Marry *Mary* the Eldeſt Siſter.

Tho' he got ſeveral Advantages by this Marriage, he loſt one that was more valuable than all the reſt, which was his Quiet. He was Old and Jealous, his Wife Handſome and Young: They quarrell'd in a little time, and he caus'd Mr. *William Barnſley*, an *Engliſhman* of *Worceſterſhire*, to be baniſh'd to *Siberia*, becauſe he ſuſpected that he was too familiar with her. *Barnſley* liv'd twenty Years in Exile, and afterwards was recall'd: He turn'd from the Proteſtant Religion to the *Ruſſian*, Marry'd a great Fortune, and liv'd at *Moſcow* in ſplendor.

Eliah the Emperors Father-in-Law, durſt not ſay that the Empreſs was his Daughter, nor any of the Family that they were related to her; even not her Unkle *John Paoloidg Martiſcha*, who was preferr'd to ſeveral profitable Poſts one after another.

When the Czaroidg or Prince-Royal is fifteen Years old, he is carried into the Market-Place, and ſhewn in Publick on Mens Shoulders that he may be known, whereby to prevent any Impoſture, there having been many Cheats impos'd on the

Muſ-

covites for real Princes. Till he arrives at that Age no Body ſees him, but thoſe that are intruſted with his Education, and ſome of the Chief of his Domeſticks. Even the ordinary ſort of People in *Muſcovy* hide their Children from every Body, but their intimate Friends and neareſt Relations, they having a Superſtition among them, that Strangers have certain Looks that are unlucky.

Their Children are ſtrong and robuſt, they never Suck above a Month or two Months at the moſt, after which they give 'em a Horn, or a ſort of Silver Cup made like a Horn, with a dry Dug of a Cow ty'd to one end of it for them to Suck: At two Years old they make 'em obſerve Faſts, which are very ſtrict. They have four general ones in a Year, in *Lent* they faſt three Days in a Week, *Wedneſdays*, *Fridays* and *Saturdays*, on which Days they don't ſo much as eat Fiſh, living on Cabbage, Cucumbers and Rye-bread. They then drink nothing but *Quaſſi*, a ſort of Beveridge weaker than Small-beer; they won't drink after a Man who has eat *Fleſh*, and when they are Sick they will take no Phyſick, in the Compound of which there is either *Cor Cervi* or *Pil. Lepor*; ſo ſcrupulous are they in the obſervation of their Faſts.

Their

Their uſual Pennances are to bend their Bodies Crooked, to ſtrike their Heads againſt an Image, ſometimes to eat nothing but Bread, Salt and Cucumbers, and to drink only Water.

They never eat any thing that they call *Pagano, i. e.* Impure, as Horſefleſh, Hares, Rabbits, Elks, or Mares-Milk, Aſſes-Milk, *&c.* in which they obſerve the *Moſaical* Law in ſome meaſure.

The Emperors Magazines being burnt lately, no leſs than ſix thouſand Flitches of Bacon were burnt in them, by which we may ſee that there's ſome difference between their Religion and that of the *Tartars*, who abhor all manner of Swines-Fleſh.

Veal is reckon'd impure, yet Lamb is not. *Venice-Treacle* is alſo not allow'd by them, becauſe there's Vipers Fleſh in the Compoſition of it; nor will they eat any thing if there is the leaſt Musk, Civet, or Caſtor-Fleſh in it, tho' the Barbarians feed on it in the North very frequently.

Sugar and Sugar-Candy are *Scarmunas, i. e.* Forbidden on Faſt-Days; and a Knife that has cut Fleſh muſt not be us'd till twenty four Hours after.

The Regularity that the *Muſcovites* obſerve in their Faſts, is of great advantage to them, they would not without it have Meat enough to ſerve their occaſions, be-

cauſe they are forc'd all the VVinter long to ſhut up their Cattle in Houſes, for five or ſix Months together; and the Peaſants, who are perfect Slaves, don't much care to trouble themſelves about encreaſing their ſtock of Cattle, for fear their Lord ſhould come and take 'em away from them, which is very common for them to do.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Patriarchs: Of the Burials among the Ruſſians: *Of their exceſſive Debauches in the Carnaval-time: Of their Images; their Puniſhment of Hereticks: Of the Liberty of the Monks and Nuns: Of their Muſick and Daneing.*

THe Patriarch is chief of all the Eccleſiaſticks: The Perſon who exerciſes that Office at preſent, left the Court two or three Years ago on ſome diſguſt he took at the Miniſters. 'Twas ſaid he began to make Innovations, and that

that he did not love Images, to which the *Muſcovites* pay a great deal of reſpect. The Patriarchal See has been ever ſince Vacant, but the Metropolitan or Biſhop, or rather Coadjutor, performs all the Duties of his Office, and the Czar dares not fill the Patriarchal Chair ſo long as the abdicated Prelate lives, ſo highly is his Perſon reverenc'd in *Ruſſia*.

Of all the *Muſcovite* Ceremonies, that of *Palm*-Sunday is the moſt extraordinary. A hundred Men are order'd to clean the Streets for the magnificent Proceſſion. The Emperor marches a foot, richly dreſs'd in Cloth of Gold, the Train of his Robe born up by Princes, and all the Court waiting on him. The firſt that goes before him, is the Officer that carries his Handkerchief, lying on another embroider'd all over, which hangs on his Arm, the Servants of the Houſhold going before him. In this order they proceed to the Church call'd *Jeruſalem*, but they ſtop by the way at a Place built with Free-ſtone, in the manner of a Platform, where he ſays his Prayers, bends his Body almoſt double, turning towards the Eaſt, and then he enters the Church of *Jeruſalem*, which is not far off.

He ſtays there an Hour, and then returns back to his Palace, holding on his Arm the Bridle of the Patriarchs Horſe,

capariſon'd with white Linnen, on which the Prelate rides aſide, carrying a Croſs in his Hand, and giving his Benediction to the People. The Reins of his Bridle are three Ells long, ſupported by three Gentlemen marching behind the Emperor. Inſtead of a Mitre, the Patriarch wears at that time a flat Cap on his Head, adorn'd with Diamonds and Golden Loops, edg'd round with Ermines: A Band of young Men carry ſeveral pieces of Stuff, of three or four Ells long, before him, ſome Red, ſome Blue, ſome Green, ſome Yellow, and ſome of other Colours. The *Metropolites*, the *Protopopes* and the *Popes*, have all of them *Chaſubles* on, a ſort of Caps us'd by the *Popiſh Prieſts* when they ſay Maſs. The Gentlemen and Lawyers have Boughs of Willow, inſtead of Branches of Palm, in their Hands. The Czars Guards, which are very numerous, proſtrate themſelves flat on the Ground; and a Triumphal Arch is born along with a Tree on it, from which ſeveral Boys in the Machine ſtrive to reach the Apples. When the Ceremony is over, the Patriarch ſends the Emperor a Purſe with a hundred *Rubles* in it.

The Bells in the Church call'd *Jeruſalem*, are ſaid to be the biggeſt in the World; there is one of them that weighs thirty

thirty Tun, and when 'tis rung, it almoſt deafens all that ſtand near it. The Czar delights mightily in hearing them.

There is a Niche in the Church where the Patriarch ſtands to give the People his Bleſſing, after which he ſays theſe Words, *Go and eat nothing theſe three Days.*

As for him himſelf, he lies proſtrate on the Ground all Night, and continues in Prayer till *Eaſter-Day*. The Gentleman of *Lorain*, from whoſe Memoirs this Account is taken, told me a Story of an accident that happen'd to an *Engliſh* Merchants Servant on this occaſion.

The Servant was a *Ruſſian* by Birth, but born far in the Country, and having never ſeen ſuch a Ceremony before, when he went to Church he came back ſo melancholly, that his Maſter took notice of it, and ask'd him the reaſon of it. The *Ruſſian* told him the Orders which were given by the Patriarch, *That no Body ſhould eat any thing in three Days time*, and was afraid he ſhould in the mean while die of Hunger. He faſted two or three Days, and was ready to eat himſelf, not being us'd to ſuch Pennance, however he held out, and then ſwore he would never go to Church to hear the Patriarchs Bleſſing again.

On *Eaſter-Day* the *Muſcovite* Men and Women ſalute one another with a Kiſs, give a red Egg, and cry *Chriſtos vas Chreſch*, God bleſs you.

In *Eaſter Week* all the Emperors Gentlemen and Domeſticks kiſs the Patriarchs Hand, and he preſents them with red Eggs, or thoſe that are Gilt. Thoſe of the higheſt Quality have three, thoſe of the middle Rank two, and thoſe of the loweſt one.

The Patriarchal Palace joyns to that of the Emperor, 'tis built of Stone, and for its largeneſs is very ſtately, but elſe 'tis a mean Building.

The greateſt ſign of Joy in the *Ruſſians* on their Feſtivals, is their Drinking, and their moſt ſolemn Days are thoſe in which they make moſt Debauches. 'Tis no great ſhame among 'em for Men, Women, Prieſts and Lawyers to be ſeen reeling in the Streets. When the Women of Quality have a merry Meeting together, ſhe who makes the Entertainment, ſends to all of them the next Day to know how they got home, and how they paſt the Night. The common Anſwer to this Compliment is, *I thank your Miſtreſs for our good Cheer, I was ſo merry laſt Night, I can't tell how I found our Houſe out.*

The

The Burials of the *Ruſſians* are very particular. As ſoon as a Man has given up the Ghoſt, all the Windows of the Chamber in which he Dy'd are immediately ſet open. A Baſon of Holy-Water is brought for him to bath his Soul in. A piece of Bread is put on the Crown of his Head, that he might not die of Hunger in the long Journey he is about to take. They put a pair of black Shoes on his Feet, ſome *Copeakes* or pieces of Money in his Mouth, and in his Hand a Certificate ſign'd by the Metropolite of the Place, to inform St. *Nicholas* of his Life and Converſation.

When that is done, his Body is carry'd to Church, where 'tis kept but a very little while before 'tis interr'd.

The Wife of the Deceas'd is oblig'd to ſhow an inconſolable Affliction, and to hire other Women to mourn with her. The moſt pompous Funerals are thoſe at which a great number of theſe Mercenary Mourners aſſiſt. Theſe Women have ſeveral mournful Queſtions which they ask of the Deceas'd, in a diſmal Tone, as *Ah, my Dear! why have you left us? Did not your Wife do every thing you would have her? Did ſhe not take due care of your Houſe? Did ſhe not bring you ſeveral pretty Children? Did you want any thing?* Or elſe they ask him, *Why did you Die?*

Had you not a handſome Wife, lovely Children, and as much Brandy as you would Drink? For it ſeems Brandy is ſo Divine a Liquor with them, they fancy it will make 'em Immortal.

When a Man Dies without having Confeſt himſelf, or receiv'd ſome extream Unction, he muſt not have Chriſtian Burial. Such as have been kill'd or are ſtarv'd to Death with Cold, are remov'd to a Place where the *Zemsky Precaus* is, there they lie expos'd for three or four Days, thoſe that own 'em in that time, are permitted to bury them, or elſe they are ſent to *Boske* or *Bogzi Dome*, that is the Houſe of God, where in a Vaulted Cave may ſometimes be ſeen three or four hundred Carcaſſes at a time, which the Prieſts bury one after another in St. *John*'s Church-Yard: They read a Pſalm over their Graves every Day for a Month after they are Bury'd; during all that while the Dirt is not thrown in upon them, but their Graves are cover'd with a thick Mat to keep out the Rain.

All the *Carnaval* time the *Muſcovites* abandon themſelves to all manner of Debauchery, and drink ſo exceſſively the laſt Week before *Lent*, that one would think they ought to drink no more as long as they liv'd. There is a ſort of Brandy drank among them, ſo ſtrong

and

and ſo ſubtle, that 'twill take Fire in their Mouths, from whence, I have been told, Flame will ſometimes iſſue out, and the Country People fancy 'twould kill them preſently, if they had not Milk ready at hand to extinguiſh it. Many of them, after a Debauch in the time of Carnaval, going home, fall down on the Snow, and would freeze to Death, if others ſomewhat more ſober, did not meet with 'em. 'Tis a very melancholly ſight, at that time, to ſee ten or twelve dead Men drawn along on a Sledge, one having a Shoulder eaten off by Dogs, another his Face, and ſome nothing but Bones left. There ſeldom paſſes a Carnaval without two or three hundred ſuch terrible Accidents.

If a *Ruſſian* finds any one of his Acquaintance in danger of Death, he will not aſſiſt him to get out of it, becauſe if he dies in his Hands, he muſt paſs Examination by the Judge of the *Zemsky Prevaus*, who always takes care to make him pay ſeverely before he acquits him.

The *Muſcovite* Images, while they had any, were like the ancient *Greeks*, only they were more ugly and courſe. My Friend asking them, *Why they repreſented their Gods under ſuch deform'd Figures?* They reply'd *Their Gods were not Proud.* When the Painting of any Image was worn out, 'twas carried to a place call'd

Gods

Gods Market, where thoſe that bought it had another giv'n 'em in Exchange, for which they paid ſome Money. If the Man who made the Image was not ſatisfied with it, he gave the Perſons that would Exchange their Image a puſh on the Back, which was a token that he did not like the Sum, and the Perſons gave him more till he was content. This Traffick was carry'd on without Words, to ſave Decencies, for they would not have it thought that they ſold their Gods. 'Twas a great Crime for any one to ſay he had bought an Image, he only call'd it Exchanging.

Thoſe Images that were done with, were thrown into the River with a piece of Silver, thoſe that flung 'em in making the ſign of the Croſs, and ſaying *Proſti*, in Engliſh, *Adieu Brother*, or elſe *Proſti grandi, God be with you my Brother.*

When there happens a Fire any where, the firſt care of the Inhabitants was to ſave their Images, and if by chance they were burnt, they did not ſay they were burnt but Vaniſh'd on High. When a Church is burnt, they do not call it burning, but aſcending, as that *ſuch a Church is aſcended.*

They give to their *Nicholas's*, ſo their Images were nam'd becauſe generally they were that of St. *Nicholas*, their moſt precious

precious Treasure. A Woman who had dreſt up her *Nicholas* very fine with Pearls and Diamonds, being fall'n to Decay, went to Church to beg him to lend her ſomething, repreſenting the neceſſity ſhe was in. The *Nicholas* made her never a Word of Anſwer, ſhe took his ſilence for conſent, and preſum'd upon it to take away a Ruby or two. The Prieſt watching her narrowly, ſee her take it off, ſeiz'd her, and carry'd her before a Magiſtrate, who condemn'd the poor Woman to have both her Hands cut off, which Sentence was executed upon her accordingly.

As for the Images that were in private Houſes, they put Jewels upon them and took them away as they thought fit, and when they were ſtreightned in their Affairs, they ſometimes ſtrip'd 'em to their very Shirts.

When any one is convicted of Hereſie, he is put upon the top of a low Houſe, from whence he is thrown down headlong into a Fire, and there conſum'd to Aſhes.

The Rules of the *Muſcovite* Monks and Nuns are not very ſtrict: The Monks are great dealers in Wheat, Barly, Hops, Horſes, and every thing that they can get a Penny by. The Nuns take a great deal of Liberty, they go out of their Nunneries when they pleaſe, viſit

their

their Friends, and commonly live with more Licence than becomes their Sex, as well as their Profeſſion.

The *Ruſſian* Muſick is very bad, notwithſtanding they have ſeveral Schools where their Children are taught to Sing and Play upon Muſical Inſtruments, with care and ſevere Diſcipline. They borrow'd their Notes either from the *Greeks* or *Sclavonians*. Their Gammut is not at all vary'd, inſtead of *Sol*, *Fa*, *La*, they Sing *Ga*, *Ga*, *Ge*. Their Cadences are the moſt extravagant of any in the World, and nothing can be more ridiculous, or rather monſtrous, than their awkward Imitation of the *Italian Recitativo*.

The laſt Patriarch having forbidden the making of Muſical Inſtruments, and it being thought by ſome of the *Ruſſian* Miniſters, that the uſe of 'em was prejudicial to the good of the State, they have very few Inſtruments of any ſort left among 'em; however, they ſtill reſerve the Bag-pipe, which is in great reputation there. They have ſome Violins, the Bellies of which are made like a Lute, but they can't play above four or five Notes upon 'em.

Eliah the Emperors Father-in-Law, being ſent Ambaſſador to the *Hague*, the *Dutch*, who were willing to gain his good Graces, prepar'd an Entertainment for

for him, at which their beſt Muſicians and beſt Voices perform'd their utmoſt to divert him. Some Gentlemen asking him *how he lik'd the Muſick and Singing*? he anſwer'd, *Very well, for the Beggars in his Country ask'd Alms after the ſame manner*; meaning the Beggars there always Sing when they beg, as they really do in *Muſcovy*.

The Warlike Muſick of the *Muſcovites* is the Kettle-Drum, whoſe dull ſound agrees with the Melancholly Genius of the Nation. They have ſome Trumpets, which they ſound very ill, and Hunting-Horns made of Braſs.

I have ſeen ſome Anthems of theirs, ſet by the Patriarch of one of their Choirs, for ſo the chief Muſician is call'd.

The *Ruſſians* don't know how to Dance, they imagine it does not ſuit well with their Gravity. Their chief Dancers are their *Tartarian* and *Poliſh* Slaves, whom they call in to divert them at their Debauches with rude Dances.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Circaſſians *and* Coſſacks : *Of Laws and Government of the* Muſcovites : *Of the* Ruſsian *Letters, and their Manner of VVriting : The Character of the Emperor* Alexis Michaelowitz ; *with a Compariſon between him and his Anceſtors ; and of his VVars.*

THe *Circaſſians* inhabit part of *Tartary*, they are barbarous in their Manners, and ſwarthy in their Complexions. The *Circaſſian* Women are Ugly, Fat, and extreamly given to Drinking ; they ſometimes get Drunk at a Feaſt before they ſit down at Table, grow Sober with Eating, get Drunk a ſecond time as ſoon as their Meal is over, and a ſecond time grow Sober, either with Dancing or ſome other Exerciſe : They are all in general ſo much in Love with Dancing, that he who has not a Fiddle ready in his Houſe, is look'd upon as a very pitiful Fellow. Their

Their Government is entirely an Anarchy. The People, in an Inſurrection they made, deſtroy'd all the Nobility, and they are now Govern'd by Chiefs or Colonels, choſen among themſelves, with whom the moſt ordinary ſort of the Vulgar are as familiar as they pleaſe.

Tho' their Religion is the ſame with that of the *Muſcovites*, they don't do as the *Ruſſians*, forbid all Strangers to enter their Church-Doors; on the contrary they are open to all Nations, and they receive every Body with all poſſible Demonſtrations of good Nature and Hoſpitality.

Their Soldiers are call'd *Coſaques*, in the Language of the Country, from whence ſome Perſons have imagin'd that the *Coſſacks* are a Nation of themſelves, whereas they are only the Militia of the *Circaſſians*.

The Soil of *Ruſſia* is not ſo fruitful and warm as that of *Circaſſia*. Witchcraft is very common among them, and the Women of the higheſt Rank make no ſcruple to ſtudy the Black-Art.

The Government of *Muſcovy* is an abſolute Monarchy. There are ſeveral Courts of Juſtice, call'd *Precauſes*, the Judges of them are Arbitrary, and the Judgments they pronounce are deciſive. The *Ruſſians* have few Written Laws, and

their Judges, when they are not biaſs'd by Bribes, which have more power over them than Right or Preſidents, govern themſelves in all Cauſes by Cuſtom and Example in like Caſes. Their Clerks write always Kneeling, notwithſtanding they have Tables before 'em: They leave a great ſpace between each Line to waſt Paper, of which prodigious quantities are conſum'd by them, and thus pick their Clients Pockets, *ſomething like the Chancery-Clerks in a Kingdom very well known to the* Engliſh *Readers, and the Country Attorneys there, who ruin more than War or Fire ever did.*

Podiack is a Name given to the Clerk or Secretaries of their Courts, and their Principal is call'd *Diack.*

All their Buſineſs at Law runs in the Nature of Petitions; they are roll'd up in Rolls; the Advocate preſents them to the Judge, over whom there is commonly a *Boyar* ſet to obſerve his Actions, and to interpoſe his Superiour Authority when he thinks fit. If the *Boyar* ſits in Perſon, all Petitions are preſented to him, who gives it to the Secretary if he does not incline to return an Anſwer preſently, and the Secretary will not put him in mind of it, unleſs the Advocate bribes him.

They

They have two and forty Characters in their Alphabet, moſt of them *Greek*.

The Czar now Reigning, (*Anno* 1670) was born in the Year 1630: He deſcended, by his Mothers ſide, from *John Baſilowitz*, and had an Elder Brother that dy'd young, who was a Prince of great hopes, only he ſhew'd too much inclination to Cruelty.

He took delight in plucking out Pigeons Eyes, calling 'em Rebels and Traytors, and ſometimes to pull off their Heads, ſaying they had betray'd his Father and himſelf, and deſerv'd to be ſo us'd.

The preſent Czar is Six Foot high: His Mein is Lofty and Majeſtick. He is Fat, and of a ſanguine Complexion. His Hair is of a light brown Colour. He never ſhaves his Beard. When he is Angry he's very Cruel, but otherwiſe very good natur'd. Being one Day preſt very hard by the Officers of the Army to condemn a Deſerter to Death, he anſwer'd, *'Twas not reaſonable to do it, for God had not given Courage alike to all Men.* He loves his Wife tenderly, and is given to no manner of Debauchery. He is very kind to his Children and Siſters, has an excellent Memory, is very Devout, and never miſſes going to Morning and Evening Prayer. If he is not well, he

has Divine Service perform'd in his Bed-Chamber, but if his Health permits him, he conſtantly goes to Chapel at Prayer-Hours to be preſent at the publick Worſhip. In general Faſts he always aſſiſts at the Midnight Devotions, and ſtands upright four or five Hours together, on ſome occaſions proſtrates himſelf to the Ground a thouſand times, and on others more ſolemn, fifteen hundred. He never makes a ſet Meal during the general Faſts, except on *Sundays*, *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays*, on the other Days he eats only a bit of brown Bread and Salt, ſome Cucumbers and pickl'd Muſhrooms, and drinks only a little Small-Beer. In *Lent* he never eats Fiſh above twice; he obſerves an exact Faſt for the whole Seven Weeks, during which he lives upon Eggs and Milk.

Beſides the great Faſts, and ſome other little ones particular to the *Ruſſians*, every *Monday*, *Wedneſday* and *Friday* throughout the Year, he won't touch a bit of any thing that comes from Fleſh-Meat, ſo that of the twelve Months in the Year he faſts eight.

In Publick Proceſſions he walks with his Head bare in dry Weather. Tho' he is thus very Religious, and a great Bigot to his own Religion, nevertheleſs he

w

will not ſuffer his Subjects, when they die, to bequeath large Legacies to the Church: Nay, in time of War, and ſometimes under the pretence of borrowing, he takes away the Church-Plate and never reſtores it; if he did not do ſo, his Revenues would not anſwer his Expence, the Church being in poſſeſſion of two Thirds of the Riches of his Empire.

There is an Hoſpital for old Men in his Palace, in which ſome have liv'd to be one hundred and twenty Years old. He takes a pleaſure in viſiting them, and talking with them of Events that happen'd in the Reigns of his Anceſtors.

On *Good-Friday* at Night he viſits all the Priſons, pays ſome of the Priſoners Debts, pardons ſome Criminals, according to their ſeveral Deſerts, or the ſmallneſs of their Offences, and gives Alms to all that are in want.

All the Eccleſiaſtical Benefices in his Empire, are in his Gift, but he was ſo angry with the laſt Patriarch, that he would not nominate another to ſucceed him; wherefore he order'd, that the Pretenders to the Patriarchate ſhould caſt Lots, which Cuſtom is ſince abrogated.

In ſhort, this Emperor has a great many ſublime Qualities, and was it not that

he has abundance of ill Councellors about him, who turn him from the good way he would otherwiſe chooſe to walk in, he might be reckon'd among the Greateſt and Wiſeſt Princes of his Age.

His Fathers Inclinations tended to Peace, his own tends to War. He has had ſeveral Quarrels with the *Tartars*, *Swedes* and *Poles*, by which his Dominions have been ſo impoveriſh'd and depopulated in ten Years time, that they will not recover their loſſes in forty, nor be in the flouriſhing condition they were in at his coming to the Crown.

The laſt Plague in *Muſcovy* carry'd off in ſix Years time, ſeven or eight hundred thouſand Men, Women and Children. The Crim of *Tartary* in four or five Years led above four hundred thouſand into Captivity, who never will return to *Muſcovy* more, and three hundred thouſand at leaſt were kill'd in the Wars.

The beſt Lands in *Ruſſia* are worn out with often Ploughing, and the worſt can't be cultivated for want of Labburers. Thoſe who Sail up the *Volga* will all the way meet with ſix Women for one Man. The Price of all Commodities is riſen ſix times the value they were before theſe Troubles; and Copper-Money, which formerly us'd to paſs current among

mong them, is now in no Credit, the *English* and *Dutch* refuſing to take it in all Payments whatſoever.

CHAP. IX.

The Riſe and Progreſs of the Ruſſian *Empire; of the Family of the* Czar, *of* John Baſilowitz, *ſurnam'd the* Tyrant, *his Conqueſts, his Humours, his Veneration for Queen* Elizabeth *of* England; *He joyns himſelf with a Company of Robbers: Of the Etimology of the VVord* Czar: *The Emperor's VVives, his Diet, Recreations, Viſits, and the* Czaroidge *or Heir-Apparent.*

THe *Ruſſians* were freed from the Slavery of the *Tartars* in the Year 1679, by *John* Duke of *Volodomir*, who at firſt had only the Sovereignty of that Dutchy, but at laſt he extended his Con-

queſts, ſeiz'd the City of *Moſcow*, Capital of the *Ruſſian* Empire, and expell'd the *Tartars* out of his Territories. His Succeſſor *John Baſilowitz* render'd the *Ruſſian* Name, which had for ſeveral Ages been the Contempt of the *North*, formidable to their Neighbours. He was Cruel, and therefore ſirnam'd the Tyrant; however that Cruelty was exercis'd moſt on the Enemies of his Empire, whom he ſubdu'd, and made way for its future Growth. He was Brave, but of a very whimſical Humour. One Day he went to his *Diack*, or Secretary of State, and preſented him with a Petition drawn up in form in his own Name, and addreſs'd to the *Diack*, wherein he pray'd him to furniſh him by ſuch a time with an Army of 200000 Men, which would extreamly oblige him, and engage him to mind him always in his Prayers. The *Diack* who knew his Humour, receiv'd the Petition, and ſaid it ſhould be anſwer'd. He rais'd the Men with extream Diligence, and 'twas with this Army he conquer'd *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, and made himſelf Maſter of *Siberia*, and moſt of his Dominions in *Aſia*.

The *Muſcovites* lov'd him for his Valour and Familiarity with them. He affected to be as kind to the *Populace*, as he was ſevere to the *Boyards*. He always held a Stick

Stick in his Hand with an Iron Spike in it, the point of which was very ſharp, and often as he talk'd with them he would prick them in the Legs; if they endur'd the pain with conſtancy, he ever after took them into his Favour, and had a great eſteem for them.

Complaint being made to him that a *Vayvod*, or Governour of a Province, had receiv'd a Preſent of a Gooſe full of *Ducats*, he ſent for him to Court, making as if he knew nothing of the Bribe. When he came there, he took him to a place where Criminals were commonly Executed, and commanded the Hangman to cut off his Arms and Legs, and at every Blow he ask'd him *How he lik'd Gooſe-Fleſh.*

Hearing the Inhabitants of *Vologda* cheated their Cuſtomers by ſhort meaſure, he ſent Orders to his Officers there, to get him a certain Yard or Meaſure, to ſee whether it was ſo long as it ſhould be, and finding it fall ſhort of the Lawful Length, he Fin'd them ſeverely.

Some *Engliſh* and *Scotch-Men* laughing at certain Freaks he committed at a Feaſt, he commanded they ſhould be brought before him ſtript ſtark Naked, and in that condition he forc'd them to pick up five or ſix Buſhels of Peas, one by one, which he had thrown about his Chamber on purpoſe.

purpoſe: When they had done, he let them go, having firſt made them Drink, and admoniſh'd them not to laugh at him another time.

He order'd a certain Perſon of the Province of *Caſan*, whoſe Name was *Plehaſve*, or *Bald-Pate*, to be ſent for. His Secretary miſtook him, for inſtead of Writing to the *Vayvod* of the Province to ſend up *Plehaſve*, he wrote for one hundred and fifty Bald-Pated Men. The *Vayvod* could find but four-ſcore, which he ſent to the Secretary, with a Letter of Excuſe, that he could not compleat the Number he requir'd of him. The Emperor reading the Letter, was amaz'd at it, and could not imagine what he meant by ſending ſo many Bald-Pates. At laſt the Secretaries over-ſight was found out, and the *Czar* was ſo far from being Angry at it, that he made them Drink and ſo diſmiſt them. The Secretaries Blunder was turn'd to a Jeſt, and he came off much better than he expected.

He had ſuch an Eſteem of and Friendſhip for Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, that he took hold of all opportunities to ſhew it. 'Twas thought by ſome Perſons of thoſe Times, who pretended to be very good Politicians, that he intended to Marry her, tho' we ſuppoſe they had very little Grounds for their Conjectures; nor

nor was it likely that the Greateſt, Fineſt and moſt Polite Princeſs of *Europe*, would Marry a *Barbarian*. However, 'twas ſaid when his Affairs were in a bad Condition, and he was oblig'd to fly with his Treaſures to *Vologda*, which City he fortify'd, that he deſign'd to make his Eſcape to *England* in caſe he was forc'd to quit *Muſcovy*, which he was not without fear of, in a Tumult of the People and an Incurſion of the *Tartars*, but he triumph'd over all his Enemies. 'Twas this Prince who order'd a Foreign Ambaſſadors Hat to be Nail'd to his Head for daring to wear it in his Preſence. Notwithſtanding which barbarous Act, Sir *Jeremy Bowes*, the Queen of *Englands* Ambaſſador, coming to *Moſcow* ſoon after, not only put on his Hat before him, but cock'd it boldly. The Emperor ask'd him *If he had not heard how another Ambaſſador had been us'd for the like or leſs Preſumption.* Sir *Jeremy* reply'd, *Yes, Sir, I have, but I am the Ambaſſador of Queen* Elizabeth *of* England, *who neither takes off her Bonnet nor ſtands bare-headed to any Prince whatſoever. Her Perſon I repreſent, and ſhe will revenge to the utmoſt whatever Affront is put upon her Miniſters.* Upon this the Emperor turn'd about to his Courtiers, and ſaid *There's a brave Man for you that dares Talk and Act thus for the Honour and*

Intereſt

Intereſt of his Miſtreſs, which of you Raſcals would do ſo much for me?

Sir *Jeremy Bowes* was envy'd by the *Boyards* on this Account, and thoſe of them who had the *Czars* Ear moſt, perſwaded him to give the Knight a mad Horſe to back, hoping he would break his Neck in attempting it. *Bowes* undertook the Task, and manag'd the Beaſt with ſuch Addreſs, that he mounted him, rode him and ſo tir'd him that he lay down under him, loſt his Mettal, and did not long ſurvive the Experiment; after which the *Czar* highly honour'd Sir *Jeremy*, and gave him ſeveral particular marks of his Eſteem.

John Baſilowitz making a Progreſs thro' ſeveral Provinces of his Empire, divers *Boyards*, and other Perſons preſented him with ſuch Gifts as they thought would be moſt acceptable to him. Among the reſt a Shoemaker conſulted with his Wife what Preſent he ſhould make his Majeſty. A pair of *Lopkies* or Shoes ſhe thought would be too little by it ſelf, and ſo ſhe advis'd him to root up a great Turnip they had in their Garden, and carry it with the *Lopkies* to the *Czar*. The Emperor was ſo well pleas'd with the Preſent, that he order'd all his Attendants to buy Shoes of him, and to give him for them twice as much as they were worth.

worth. He bought a pair of them himſelf. By this means the Shoemaker was put in a condition to drive a briſker Trade, and growing rich in a little time left off his Shop. His Children who inherited his Eſtate, became Gentlemen, and are known to this Day by the Name of the *Lopotskies*. There's a Tree near the place where his Houſe ſtood, which when any one comes by, he throws off his old Shoes in remembrance of the Shoemaker.

A Gentleman who underſtood how well it had far'd with this honeſt Man, thought if he preſented the Emperor with ſomething conſiderable it might have a proportionable Recompence, ſo he gave him a very fine Horſe, and the *Czar* in return made him a Preſent of the Turnip the Shoemaker had given him.

This Emperor diſguiſing himſelf one Day, rambled into the Country near *Moſcow*, and coming to a Village, enquir'd at it for Lodgings. Every Body refus'd to take him in, except a poor Man, whoſe Wife was crying out, and was deliver'd in the preſence of the Emperor. He return'd to *Moſcow* early the next Morning, promiſing his Landlord to bring him ſome Godfathers and Godmothers. The next Day he was as good as his Word: He went to his Houſe, attended by his whole Court, made him ſeveral rich Preſents,

ſents, and ſet Fire to all the Houſes in the Village except his, only warning the Inhabitants to be more charitable for the future, telling them *That the beſt way to teach them how to treat Strangers hereafter, was for them to experience themſelves how pleaſant it was to be driven to neceſſity, and lie out in the Air in Winter.*

He often took delight to aſſociate himſelf with Robbers. He adviſ'd them on a time to rob the Emperors Treaſury, aſſuring them he knew how it was to be done. *How*, ſays one of the Thieves, giving him a box o'th' Ear, *you Raſcal you, would you rob the Emperor, who is ſo good and gracious a Prince. Had we not better fall upon one of the rich* Boyards, *who cheat and plunder him every Day.* The *Czar* was ſo well pleas'd with his Anſwer, that he chang'd Caps with him, and bid him meet him next Day at *Duaretz*, a place by which he us'd to go frequently. He told the Thief they would be very merry, and drink a Cup of Brandy and *Metheglin* together. The Robber came at the time appointed, the *Czar* ſeeing him, call'd him to him, and adviſ'd him to change his courſe of Life, gave him a Place at Court, and made uſe of him to diſcover and puniſh the other Rogues of his Gang.

The

The Word *Czar*, is so like that of *Cæsar*, that it apparently is deriv'd from it, and signifies *Emperor* in the *Muscovite* Tongue: The *Russians* say it means a Title above that of *King*. They call *David*, *Czar*, and the other Kings of *Europe*, *Kyrlos*, the Etimology of which seems to come from *Carolus Quintus*, whose History they have among them. The Name of the *Czar* now Reigning (*Anno* 1671.) is *Alexis Michaelowitz Romanove*, i. e. *Alexis the Son of Michael the Roman*. He has several Titles, those which are in his Great-Seal run thus.

We Alexis Michaelowitz *by the Grace of God, Great Lord Czar, Duke of Great, Little and White* Russia, *Sovereign of* Moscow, Kiovia, Uladomir *and* Novogrod, *Great Czar of* Casan, *Czar of* Astracan, *Czar of* Siberia, *Lord of* Pleskow, *Great Duke of* Smolensko, Twersko, Ugorsko, Perinsko, Vealsko, Bolgarsko, *Lord and Great Duke of* Norgorod, *of the Provinces of* Chernigora, Rezan, Rostove, Yeroslave, Belouzer, Odouria, Obderia, *and* Condinea: *Lord of all the Countries lying to the North; Lord of the Land of* Yveria, *of the Dutchies of* Cartilinan, *of* Grentzintan, *and of several other Countries and*

and Sovereignties, East, West and North, which we inherit of the Lords and Monarchs our Predeceſſors, our Father and Grand-father.

The *Czars* Arms are the ſame with the *German* Emperors, he of *Ruſſia* pretending to be deſcended from the *Roman* Emperors, as well as he of *Germany*. The difference between the *Czars* Eagle and the *German* Emperors is, that the former has a *George* on Horſe-back on its Breaſt, and a Mitre with a Crown on it between the two Heads. Some Perſons pretend *John Baſilowitz* added the *George* to his Coat on account of the *Order* of the *Garter* which he receiv'd from Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*.

The *Czar* never Marries a Woman out of his own Dominions. He chooſes one to his liking, generally among the Nobility, ſometimes among the Gentry and Commonalty. *Eliah* the Emperors Father-in-Law kept a Tavern twenty Years ago, and his Daughter the Empreſs ſold Muſhrooms in the Market. As ſoon as the *Czars* Wife is Dead, all her Family looſe their Credit, and all their hopes die with her.

The

The Emperor never ſhews himſelf to his People, but on certain Feſtivals and Days of publick Rejoycing. When he appears 'tis always with Pomp. He is magnificently dreſt, his Globes glittering with Gold and Jewels, and his Attendance are numerous, all of them handſomely Apparell'd.

'Tis very ſeldom that he Dines in Publick, when he does his Nobles Dine in his Preſence. His Guards are poſted all around his Palace, they ſtand like ſo many Statues, not daring to ſtir or ſpeak for fear of making a Noiſe. One would think by the profound Silence that is always there, that the Place was a Deſart. No Body enters the Inner-Court but his Domeſticks, and ſome Lords whoſe Offices require their Perſonal Attendance in the Imperial Palace.

He is very Sober, Drinks little or no Wine, and ſometimes puts Oil of Cinnamon or Cinnamon-Water into his Small-Beer, to make it the more pleaſant, for Cinnamon-Water is as much us'd by Perſons of Quality in *Ruſſia*, as Roſe-Water elſewhere. The Smell of *Ambergris* or *Muſk* is not valu'd by them. They have a Drink call'd *Brague*, which he commonly Drinks, 'tis what in *England* we call *Oat-Ale*. His Bread is all made

made of *Rye*, which the *Ruſſians* imagine to be more nouriſhing than *Wheat*.

When he has a mind to treat his Gentlemen he commands them to ſit round about him, and plies them with a ſort ſtrong Water double and treble Still'd. Thoſe that are not us'd to it, are apt to be very Sick with it. He will often put a little *Mercury* in it, and takes pleaſure in making them Drunk. At each Meal, he ſends a Diſh from his Table to his Favourites.

On *Eaſter-Day* all the Courtiers, and the Nobility and Gentry in and about *Moſcow*, wait upon him, kiſs his Hand, and he gives them Eggs.

He never paid a Viſit to any one of his Subjects, except his Governour, who being Sick one time he went to ſee him.

When he goes out of Town, the Eaſtern Gate of the Outer-Wall is ſhut, and ſo remains till he comes back again. He generally goes out at that Gate, unleſs upon an extraordinary Occaſion, as happen'd a few Years ago, when the Wall fell down on that ſide, and ſo he was forc'd to go another way.

He lies in his Shirt and Drawers under a rich Quilt made of Marten-Skins. He has but one Sheet under or over him.

His

His greateſt Recreation is in Hunting Fallow-Deer. He does not matter killing of them, providing he can but hunt them down. He loves Fowling, has three hundred Falconers, and the beſt Ger-Falcons in the World. They are brought out of *Siberia*. He hunts Wild-Ducks with them.

The Son of the Emperor is call'd *Czaróidg*, ſo are all his Children. When the Empreſs is brought to Bed, the People to ſhew their Joy, preſent the *Czar* with ſomething or other which he commonly returns. If he likes any Preſent and keeps it, he pays a great deal more for it than it is worth.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of the Czars *Revenues, of his Court, Jewels and Cloaths; of the Empreſſes and Ladies of Honour's Apparel. How they Travel, of the Manners and Language of the* Ruſſians, *with the difference between them and other Nations: Of their Puniſhments in Criminal Caſes; an Inſtance of it. Of their Ignorance and Idolatry, and their Veneration for St.* Nicholas.

AS the *Czar*'s Dominions are very large, ſo his Revenues are the ſame.

In the firſt Place, He is Maſter of the Eſtates and Goods of all his Subjects. No Heir can enter upon his Fathers Lands on his Death, without the Emperors Conſent, to obtain which he muſt put in a Petition to a Court erected for that pur-

purpoſe, to give Poſſeſſion to the Children of ſuch as die and have made their Wills, and to ſeize the Eſtates of ſuch as die *Inteſtate*, or without Heirs, or are convicted of any Crime by which their Eſtates became forfeited.

Secondly, His *Cuſtoms* on all Goods Exported and Imported are very conſiderable.

Thirdly, The *Cabucks* or Shops where Brandy is ſold, as alſo thoſe of Strong-Beer belong to him, and he lets them at what Rent he pleaſes. Some pay 10000 *Piſtoles*, and others 20000 a Year, according to their Trade and Abilities.

Fourthly, His Baths and Stoves bring him in a great deal, becauſe the *Muſcovites*, both Men, Women and Children, are oblig'd to Bath often out of a Principle of Religion. When the Water of the Bath is too hot they throw cold Water upon thoſe that are in it, and ſome of them, before they enter the Stove-Chamber, roul themſelves in Snow.

Fifthly, The Emperor is the chief Merchant in his Territories.

Sixthly, The Trade of *Siberian Marten* and *Sable* Skins raiſes prodigious Sums; thoſe that are ſent to get them are either Slaves or Criminals.

In ſhort, there is a *Tax* almoſt upon every thing in *Ruſſia*: That on the *Caveare* of *Aſtracan* only, of which I ſhall ſay more hereafter, is enough to maintain the Expence of his Houſe. All that hold Lands immediately of the Emperor, are oblig'd to furniſh him with Proviſions. He engroſſes all the Merchandiſe that is brought to *Moſcow* by the *Greeks* and *Perſians*. He ſends vaſt quantities of Furs to *Archangel*, as alſo Pot-Aſhes and Soap, Hemp and Flax, which he trucks for Silks, Sables, Velvets, Cloth of Gold, Sattin, Broad Cloth and Damasks, which Commodities he wants moſt, becauſe he makes all his Preſents of one kind or another of thoſe things.

All the Servants of his Houſhold have each a portion of Meal, Honey, Oats, Fiſh, Nut-Oil, Beer and Metheglin deliver'd out to them.

The *Strelſicks* and *Lanlarics* have nothing but Corn and dry'd Fiſh, of which the *Czar* has very fine Stores. They have very little Money given them, becauſe they Trade and have great Priviledges allow'd them.

The Imperial Palace is very large; 'tis all built of Stone and Brick, except the *Czars* Winter-Lodgings, which are three Stories high. Theſe are built with Timber

ber becauſe Boarded Rooms are reckon'd by them more wholſome in cold Weather than others, filthy Damps being apt to aſcend from the Vaults of thoſe Stoves where the Walls are Stone. The whole Palace is encompaſs'd with a Brick Wall, in the Circuit of which there are fourſcore Churches and Chapels, the greateſt part of which have *Cupulo's* and Gilt Croſſes upon them. The Princes and prime Miniſters have alſo their Palaces within this Wall, as, *Jacob* a *Circaſſian* Prince, *Boris Juanoidg Morolos* who was the Emperors Governour during his Minority, *Kney Alexis* Maſter of the Fur-Office, *Trebotsky* General of the *Czars* Army, *Eliah Daneloidg* the Empreſſes Father, *Kney Juan Vaſiloidg* a Prince of the Blood, and others of the firſt Rank. There are five Monaſteries, two or three *Nunneries*, the greateſt part of the *Precauſes* or Courts of Juſtice, and the Magazine of Arms and Ammunition for War.

The Tower call'd *Juan Velichy* ſtands by it ſelf, 'tis built of Brick and Free-Stone. *John Baſilowitz* began it, and his Succeſſors finiſh'd it as it is at this Day. There's a very fine Gilt *Cupulo* upon it, and a Ring of Bells in it. 'Tis as high as St. *Marks* Tower at *Venice*.

The *Czar*, as well as other Princes, has his Miniſters of State, but they are not ſo much reſpected as in other Places. The Gentlemen of his Bed-Chamber never enter it, they wait two or three Rooms off, and further when he is at Dinner.

The City of *Moſcow* or *Moſcua*, takes up a great deal of Ground, 'tis encompaſs'd with three Walls, beſides that about the Imperial Palace. The firſt, and that which is neareſt the Heart of the Town is of Red Brick, the next to it is of White, and the third of Earth, ſupported on each ſide by Planks and Beams of Fir. 'Tis fifteen or ſixteen Miles about, and was built in four Days, on a report of the approach of the *Crim* of *Tartary*.

Since the *Czars* Journeys that he has lately made to *Poland*, where he ſaw the Manners and Houſes of the *Poliſh* Princes and great Lords, his Court is grown a little more magnificent. His Apartments are hung with Tapeſtry very rich and beautiful, and he has ſeveral Country-Houſes.

There's no Prince in the World has more Jewels than he; 'tis true, moſt of them have flaws in them, but the *Ruſſians* don't mind that, providing they are large.

All

All the difference between the *Czars* Cloaths and his Nobles is, that the Emperors are a little richer. 'Tis the ſame with reference to the Empreſs and other Women of Quality, her Head-Dreſs is only a little higher than that of other Ladies, and her Smock Sleeves a little longer. They are about ſix and ſeven Ells in length, and her Gown and the Gowns of her Ladies of Honour, are made like their Judges.

The Empreſs generally Travels in a Chariot, and by Night, attended by moſt of her Ladies of Honour, her Women of the Bed-Chamber, her Embroiderers, and all her Women-Attendants that are neceſſary to be near her Perſon. Lately they rid on Horſeback very much, a Cuſtom mightily uſed formerly amongſt them, but 'twas a long time diſuſed, upon the bringing in of Chariots into *Ruſſia*. The preſent Empreſs has reviv'd it. She and her Train ride as Men do aſtride when they Hunt, which is very rarely, they then wear a white Hat on their Heads, and a Skein of Silk about their Necks.

Men and Women, whether Rich or Poor, are all Dreſt after one manner. There is but one Language and one Religion throughout all that vaſt Empire.

They differ from all other Nations, even in the leaſt Actions, and are no more like the other *Northern* Kingdoms, than they are to the *Southern* or *Weſtern*.

They wear their Shirts above their Drawers, ty'd round about their Middles a little above the Navel; they believe a Girdle makes them ſtrong, and that if they did not wear one, they ſhould be unlucky.

When they ſpit, one would think they ſneeze. Their Language and their Accent are quite different from other People's. They whiſtle with their Teeth, and not with their Lips. They ſhake their Heads when they ſhew a ſign of Admiration. 'Tis a great Sin in them, as they fancy, not to waſh their Hands after Piſſing. Even in their neceſſary Occaſions they do not do like other Men; they make no uſe of Paper, but have little *Spatula*'s of Tin well ſmooth'd, to ſupply the place of other conveniences uſed elſewhere.

As the Needle of our Dial turns round about the Hours, in theirs the Hours turn about the Needle. They imagine 'tis a very ſinful thing for a *Muſcovite* to lie with an *Engliſh* or *Dutch* Woman, but they believe a *Ruſſian* Woman may lie with any Strangers without committing

a Crime worth taking notice of, becauſe the Children ſhe has by them are born and bred up in the *Ruſſian* Religion.

They love *Rye* better than *Wheat*, for the reaſon I have already mention'd, and ſtale Fiſh better than freſh. They count their Thouſands by ſo many Fourſcore and Tens, and not by ſo many Hundreds. The firſt of *September* is their New-Years Day. Their *Æra* of the Creation amounts to ſeven thouſand and ſixty odd Years. They are very credulous, and any thing will go down with them let it be never ſo incredible: Things that are probable and reaſonable do not find ſo eaſie credit among them. When they kiſs a Woman they do it on the right Cheek. Lands that have not been above 20 Years in a Family, fall to the younger Children proportionably with the eldeſt. When they Sow, they thruſt the Needle with their Fore-Finger. They eat Carrots without ſcraping, and Peas without ſhelling; they don't gather them as we do, but tear them up, Roots and all, and ſo ſell them in the Market.

To ſay that a Man has an inconſtant Wife, they cry *He lies on a Bank of Sand.* A Mans bare VVord that has a Beard, is more valu'd among them than an Oath of one that has none. Their fineſt pieces

of

of Painting are not better than what is commonly done on *Dutch* Chimneys with *Red-Oker* and *Spaniſh White.*

They are careful to keep their Teeth black, as we are to whiten ours. They have an Art of Painting them, as alſo their Eye Balls. They reckon long Eyes and little Foreheads handſomeſt. The *Ruſſian* VVomen hide part of theirs in their Coifs. Little Feet and a ſlender Shape are Deformity with them. They do their utmoſt to grow Fat, for which purpoſe they eat exceſſively, and will lie a-Bed whole Days together, that they may increaſe in Bulk by much eating and much ſleeping. Brandy, which one would imagine ſhould rather waſt than plump them, is thought to be a great Fatner by them.

There is ſo much confuſion in the ways of Proceeding of the *Ruſſian* Judicature, that 'tis almoſt impoſſible to give a cleer Account of it. There's a *Precaus* or Court of Juſtice in each Province, in which a *Boyard* or Lord preſides, to repreſent the Emperors Perſon: He has under him a Chancellor, a *Dyack* or Secretary, ſeveral ſub-Secretaries and Clerks. If a Plaintiff brings a Suit before the Judge, and he is not corrupted by the Defendant, the former is almoſt ſure to carry the Cauſe, for that 'tis ſuppos'd the right commonly lies on his ſide. Cri-

Criminals are ſeldom condemn'd to Death in *Ruſſia*, they are ſeverely whip'd, and beſides, there's a ſort of Puniſhment worſe than Death. A Murder may be bought off with Money. If one Man kills another, and no Body proſecutes him, the Magiſtracy take no notice of it. If there be a thouſand VVitneſſes againſt a Perſon accus'd of a Capital Crime, he cannot be convicted unleſs he confeſſes it himſelf. 'Tis true, to extort that Confeſſion from him, he is expos'd to the moſt cruel Torture that can be inflicted on the Body of Man. They firſt give him the *Strapado*: If he confeſſes nothing, he is VVhip'd, and the Hangman does it ſo terribly, that he can kill the Criminal with ſix or ſeven Laſhes. Sometimes they peirce his ſides with red-hot Irons, or elſe they ſlit his Bones, ſalt them, and put them hanging to his Body on the Fire to Broil. If he ſays nothing ſtill, they cure him as well as they can, and twenty Days after, if he ſurvives the Torment, they renew it again. Sometimes they will half flea them, and if they endure all with Reſolution, which rarely happens, they pour boiling Lead, drop by drop, on the Crown of his Head cloſe ſhaven, which is the laſt Trial of his Conſtancy.

The

The Puniſhment of Coiners is to melt ſome of the Mettal of which their falſe Money was made, and force them to ſwallow it.

A young Man ſhooting an Owl in the Court of the Imperial Palace, had his Left Legg and his right Hand cut off, becauſe ſome of the Shot glanc'd into the Emperors Chamber.

If a Conſpiracy againſt the Government be detected, the Conſpirators are ſeverely put to the Torture, after which they are ſent to *Siberia*, and are either ſuffer'd to ſtarve to Death with Cold on the way, or elſe have their Eyes pluck'd out, or their Ears cut off, and are left in that diſmal Province, fifteen hundred Miles from *Moſcow*.

'Tis but lately that the *Muſcovites* have hang'd their Criminals; the reaſon why they would not permit any ſuch Execution before, was out of a fooliſh fancy, that when the Man was ſtrangled, his Soul departed downwards, and that defil'd it. The Criminal ties the Rope about his own Neck, and flings himſelf off from the Ladder when the Executioner bids him. The Hangmans Place is Hereditary, and he is careful to inſtruct his Children in his Trade, which is however not ſo reputable as in ſome parts of *France*,

France, where the Executioner pretends to be a Gentleman by his Office.

The common People in *Muſcovy* are very ignorant, and much given to Idolatry. Thoſe that live in the *Northern* Provinces about *Archangel*, *Cola*, &c. know no other God but St. *Nicholas*, who they believe Governs the World. They affirm he ſail'd upon a Mill-Stone from *Italy* to a place near *Archangel*, now call'd St. *Nicholas*'s Port, and if a *Ruſſian* ſeems but to ſuſpect the Truth of this Story, he would be in no ſmall danger of his Life.

They celebrate the Feſtivals of their own Saints with more Devotion than thoſe of the *Apoſtles*. St. *Nicholas*, they ſay is *Naſha Bradt*, one of their Brethren, who being of their own Country, has more kindneſs for them than either St. *Peter* or St. *Paul*, who never knew them. Thoſe who have made Inroads on other Nations, or plunder'd Strangers, think they expiate all their Offences by building a Church, furniſhing it with a good Ring of Bells, and ſtore of St. *Nicholas*'s adorn'd and ſet off with Jewels.

The greateſt part of the *Ruſſians* are rude and barbarous, except ſome of them who are Civiliz'd by their Commerce with Foreigners,

reigners, or have Travell'd to *Poland* and ſeen that Court. My Friend who ſupplied me with this Account of *Muſcovy*, had intermingled ſome Obſervations of *Poland*, which he made while he reſided in that Kingdom. The *Reader* will not be diſpleas'd to ſee them in this Place, ſince 'twill help to make his *Idea* of the *Northern* Parts of *Europe* the more compleat.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Polanders, *their Laws and Kings; of the* Pox *and* Plica *frequent among them; of their Treaties; with a comparison between the* Ruſſian *and* Poliſh *Languages.*

THE *Poles* are leſs barbarous than the *Muſcovites*. Some of them improve their Minds by Study and Arts, which the *Ruſſians*, Enemies to the Sciences, never encourage. The Gentlemen of *Poland* are at liberty to Travel where they pleaſe; the *Muſcovites* cannot go out of their own Country without leave of the Emperor, which is not eaſily obtain'd. However, with all theſe Advantages, the *Poles* are not ſo refin'd a People as the other Nations more *Weſtward*. They are Proud, Inſolent, Self-conceited, and have high Opinions of themſelves and their Country, which they fancy excells all others. They are Whimſical in their Dreſs,

Dreſs, Vain, Prodigal and very Oſtentatious. Their Horſes are fine, and their Furniture magnificent. They affect a Pomp in this becauſe 'tis what is moſt ſeen. They are civil to Strangers, and entertain them very handſomely for two or three Days, till they have ſeen all that they have to ſhow them, and have made them Drunk four or five times.

They drink harder than the *Ruſſians*, and are ſo quarrelſome over their Liquor, that there's ſcarce a Gentleman in the whole Kingdom, but one time or other, has been wounded in a Debauch.

Their Laws are barbarous to the laſt Degree. Murder is only puniſh'd by a Pecuniary Mulct. They pay no more than four or five Crowns for killing a Clown, the Price riſing higher according to the Quality of the Perſons murder'd.

Their Kings are in truth nothing but the Pictures of Monarchs. *Henry* III. was King of *Poland* before he reign'd in *France*. He had reaſon to be weary of their Crown, and would not by any perſwaſions they made uſe of, be prevail'd upon to keep it.

A thing of the higheſt Conſequence when debated in their general Diet, may be ſtop'd paſſing, by one Senators Vote, who has power to Proteſt againſt it without giving his reaſons for it. The Ceremony

mony is, he ſets his Hand to his Scimitar, and that ſignifies he is ready to oppoſe that Propoſition in diſpute to Death; which damns it for that *Seſſion*, and tho' perhaps the next Day the proteſting Senator changes his Opinion, yet he cannot revoke his Proteſtation.

The *Pox* is very common and dangerous in *Poland*. The *Muſcovites* got it of the *Poliſh* Women, at the time when they conquer'd *Vilna*, and ſome other Towns and Provinces on the Frontiers of *Poland*, before which Expedition the *Ruſſians* did not know what that Diſeaſe was.

The *Scurf* or *Plica* is ſtill more common than the *Pox*. The cauſe of it is, that moſt of their Springs are poyſon'd by Mines of *Arſenick* very frequent in thoſe Parts, by which means 'tis almoſt impoſſible to Travel thither and not have it. When once it gets into a Family it goes round it, no Body eſcapes the Infection. 'Tis the filthieſt and loathſomeſt Diſeaſe in the World. A Man can't look upon ſome *Polanders* who have it to extremity without turning his Stomach. Beſides that, the Symptoms of this Diſtemper are terrible to the Eyes, the Stench of it is abominable, there's no old Wound or Ulcer whoſe ſmell is ſo intolerable. I have ſeen ſome Monks, ſays my Friend

in his *Memoirs*, whoſe Heads have been all over Scurf, and their Hair clotted together, than which there can nothing be more beaſtly and ſhocking to the Sight. Nevertheleſs 'tis taken no notice of in *Poland*, the *Poles* thinking it a ſign of Health, and Gentlemen being moſt troubled with it, 'tis alſo taken for a token of their Quality. Thoſe Horſes that have it, whoſe Manes are matted and whoſe Tails are glu'd together with it, are eſteem'd the moſt bold and the moſt fit for ſervice; and if never ſo little of this Scurf is cut off, the Beaſts Die or run Mad immediately, or elſe fall Lame or Blind. 'Tis ſaid the *Poles* firſt brought up the Faſhion of Powdering Hair to hide their *Plica*.

They are more faithful in obſerving their Treaties than the *Ruſſians*, the latter making no ſcruple to break their moſt ſolemn Alliances, when 'tis for their Intereſt; and yet in their private Negociations the *Muſcovites* are very exact in making good what they Swear to, and careful how they take a falſe Oath, or indeed how they take any.

The *Poliſh* and *Ruſſian* Language differ from one another as the *Engliſh* does from the *Scotch*. The *Poliſh* Tongue paſſes for the more Copious and Polite, yet the Pronunciation is not ſofter, nor the *Orthography*

phy less rude than that of the *Russian* Language. In some of their Words there are six Consonants for one Vowel. They can hardly speak without sputtering in the Faces of those to whom they speak.

They are stately in their Salutations, and don't bow so low as the *Russians*. The *Tartars* salute their Superiours by embracing their Knees; the common People salute one another by putting the Fore-finger on the Mouth of the Person saluted, and shaking the Head a little. The manner of the *Circassians* in this case is a little odder still, they ask the Man whom they would salute *If his Servants, his Cows, his Sheep, his Horses, his Goats, his Hogs, his Cocks, his Hens and his Turkeys are all safe and well.*

CHAP. XII.

Of the Imperial Family of Ruſſia, *of the Chief Favourites and Miniſters, of the Manufactures ſet up by the Emperor and Empreſs, of the Trade of* Ruſſia *and* Engliſh *Cloth, and what means the* Dutch *make uſe of to ruin the* Engliſh *Commerce and ſettle their own.*

I Shall not pretend to write a Compleat Hiſtory of the Imperial Houſe of *Romanove* now reigning in *Muſcovy*, what is ſaid here Hiſtorically being a ſort of Digreſſion from the main ſubject of this Book, *A Voyage to the North*; but believing the Reader will be diverted with a ſhort Account of the preſent *Czar*'s Family I thought fit to give it, and ſome other Entertaining Occurrences which I met in the *Memoirs* ſo often mention'd before. 'Twould be too tedious to give, as the Gentleman who wrote them has done, a long Etymology of the Word *Czar*, and how the firſt *Romanove* was advanc'd to that Title; or how *Baſilowitz* having reduc'd all the

the Petty Dukes that held Sovereignties in *Muſcovy*, erected a Monarchy on their Ruins. *John Baſilowitz* his Son follow'd his Steps, was ſucceſsful, and ſubdu'd the Kings of *Caſan*, *Aſtracan* and *Siberia*. To write all thoſe Events would make a large Hiſtory of it ſelf, and too long interrupt the courſe of *Our Voyage*, *Baſilowitz* reigning many Years, and tho' he was the greateſt Tyrant in the World, he was alſo one of the moſt happy Monarchs, if Victory alone can make a Prince happy. The *Czar Michael* Father to the preſent *Czar* (*Anno* 1647) was a very Merciful, Religious and good Prince, courteous to Strangers, and one who delighted in maintaining a friendly Correſpondence with all other Chriſtian Potentates. *Grave Wolmer* the laſt King of *Denmark*'s Natural Son, would have Marry'd his Daughter, but the Clergy of *Ruſſia* oppos'd it, ſaying, Wolmer *was a Heretick, and therefore the Princeſs could not lawfully Marry him.* The *Daniſh* Prince reſenting that the *Ruſſian* Prieſts ſhould oppoſe his Match, challeng'd them to diſpute with his Chaplains, whoſe Religion was the trueſt, his or theirs. The *Ruſſians* refus'd the Challenge, the *Czar* was highly enrag'd againſt them for it, demanding *What ſort of Faith they profeſs'd that they could not defend it by Reaſon and Argument?* Some Days after as he was going

going to Bed, he was taken with a Vomiting, and dy'd the next Morning, not without ſuſpicion of being Poyſon'd, the Prieſts apprehending he would make Innovations in their Religion. The *Czaritza* or Empreſs did not long ſurvive him, and *Grave Wolmar* gave over all Thoughts of the Marriage.

This Emperor often recommended to his Son *Alexis Michaelowitz* to follow the Advice of *Boris Juanoidg* his Governour. There is an odd Story of the fate of this *Boris*'s Father. Being a Widdower, and the Emperor *Baſilowitz*'s Favourite, he deſir'd him to beſtow one of his Concubines upon him in Marriage. *Baſilowitz* granted his requeſt without naming any of them in particular. The Favourite having a Licence at large, took the handſomeſt of them all, at which *Baſilowitz* fell into a violent Paſſion, and hearing they were retir'd together to one of his Stove-Chambers or *Hummums*, to enjoy themſelves with the greater liberty, as they thought they might lawfully do, having the Emperor and the Prieſts conſent, the *Czar* commanded a Bear to be let looſe upon them, which was done, and the two Lovers immediately devour'd by him.

Boris and *Cleab*, the unhappy Favourites two Sons, were bred up with the Emperor *Michael*, and *Boris* gain'd ſuch an influence

fluence over him, by the benefit of a long Familiarity, that he govern'd all things as he thought fit, and was more absolute than his Master. He lessen'd the number of the *Czar*'s Officers, and those that he kept in their Posts were fond to serve for Half-Pay,; even the very Ambassadors Pensions were retrench'd. He impos'd new Taxes, and sent those Dukes, who having been Sovereigns formerly were most dangerous, to distant Governments, as *Pripuin* to *Belgorod*, and *Corathin* to *Casan*. In short, he was so severe to his Ministry that the Nobility hated him as much as they envy'd him, and he despising their *Intrigues* to depose him from his exalted Station of chief Favourite and Minister, depress'd them to raise his own Creatures.

The People murmur'd at the new Impositions; there was an Insurrection upon it, they requir'd Justice, and that the Emperor should deliver *Boris* over to them to be made an Example of for his Male-Administration. The *Czar* was surpriz'd at their Demands, not suspecting any such Insolence from his Slaves, for so his Favourite had represented all his Subjects to be. He endeavour'd to mollifie those of them who were most outragious, and to gain time and save his Favourites Life he swore he would banish him from Court

for ever. This Compliance appeas'd them. *Boris* was order'd to retire, and the Nobility were reſtor'd to the *Czar*'s Favour, which they manag'd as little to the Peoples ſatisfaction as *Boris* had done, who being a cunning Stateſman, obſerv'd their Diſcontents, and improv'd them to his Advantage, by encouraging the Clamour againſt the Nobility, who oppreſt the People ſo much, that thoſe who lately were moſt for baniſhing the Favourite, were now moſt for recalling him. They found it no difficult matter to ſucceed in their Enterprize; the *Czar* upon their Petition did readily what they would have him do, ſent for *Boris* to Court, and he was afterwards very kind to thoſe that had any way been inſtrumental in his Reſtoration.

Ever after he careſt the People on all occaſions, and favour'd them to the utmoſt of his power. He undertook to protect all Foreigners, and was equally belov'd by Natives and Strangers. He dy'd about ſix Years ſince, in a very old Age, belov'd by his Prince and regretted by the People. He had the Character of an able Politician, whoſe Counſels were ſucceſsful. He dy'd lamented by every Body but the Ancient Nobility, whoſe Ambitious Deſigns he always thwarted.

'Twas he that made *Eliah Daneloidg* General of the *Czar*'s Army, who before he

had a fit of an *Apoplexy* was reckon'd a Man of great Worth and Capacity. He was bold, daring, faithful, ſtrong and vigorous. His Memory was ſo good that he knew every one's Buſineſs in all the Employments Civil and Military. He alſo could diſtinctly tell the ſeveral Quarters of an Army of fourſcore thouſand Men. He could tell the Names and Characters of all his Officers, but the Accident that happen'd to him, as we have already ſaid, weaken'd him extreamly both in Body and Mind, and his Memory is now ſo bad that he hardly remembers thoſe Perſons with whom he was moſt familiar.

He was Treaſurer, and held five or ſix other great Offices, which he manag'd with equal Skill and Succeſs. 'Tis true he plunder'd a great deal, and the Emperor who fear'd more than he lov'd him, wink'd at it the more willingly becauſe whatever *Eliah* ſcrap'd up would fall to him in right of his Wife, *Eliah*'s Daughter. Nevertheleſs after the Death of *Daneloidg*'s Wife, obſerving that he was too kind to ſome *Tartarian* and *Poliſh* VVomen, he preſt him either to Marry or leave the Court, on which occaſion I can't help remarking, that Marriages are in high eſteem in *Ruſſia*, either out of Policy to encourage what helps to People the Country, or to prevent the *Ruſſians* abandoning them-

themſelves to Boys and Beaſts, to which they are not a little enclin'd; nor is that Crime puniſh'd with Death there as 'tis in other places. 'Tis call'd *Ne Miſheay*, and it got that Name by this means. A young Raſcal who was ſurpriz'd committing an abominable Action with a Cow, cry'd out to the Perſon that ſpy'd him at it, *Ne Miſheay, Don't diſturb me*; this was done about 8 Years ago, and ever ſince that horrid Sin has been ſo call'd.

Eliah's Misfortune would have been regretted more had not *Naſhockin* ſucceeded him in the Adminiſtration of Publick Affairs. This Lord is one of the Wiſeſt Miniſters in *Europe*. He is a Man of Temper and Integrity. He is indefatigable in the Diſcharge of the Offices committed to his Management, and a hearty Aſſerter of Monarchical Government.

He is Chancellor of the Office of Ambaſſadors, Treaſurer and Governour of *Ruſſia Minor*, and has ſeveral other Employments which his Predeceſſor *Eliah* held before him.

'Twas *Naſhockin* that concluded the Peace with *Poland* very honourable to his Maſter. He alſo form'd the *Swediſh* Alliance, and erected the Silk-Manufacture throughout all *Ruſſia*, and by his means *Ruſſia* was made the Mart of the Silk-Trade, moſt of that Commodity, either from *Perſia*

ſia or the *Indies* being brought thither, and ſent thence into the other parts of *Europe*: But this Commerce did not laſt long. His next work was to reform the Emperors Houſhold, and the Laws of the Empire. He contriv'd it ſo that no Suit ſhould be long depending, and every Governour of a Province, aſſiſted by his Council, had power given him of Life or Death. Before that Order Criminals of all ſorts were brought to *Moſcow* to be Try'd, which was very troubleſome and inconvenient for the *Czar*.

The laſt Summer a *Jew* who had turn'd *Turk*, and was Interpreter to the *Perſian* Merchants, accus'd *Naſhockin* on their Behalf before the Emperor, for doing them ſome Injuſtice, in the *Precauſe* or Court of Ambaſſadors, of which he was Chancellor. The Emperor anſwer'd, that *Naſhockin* had the management of all Affairs relating to Trade, that he refer'd them to him, and if he was unjuſtly accus'd, their Interpreter ſhould pay dear for it. The *Czar* was as good as his Word, the Accuſation being found to be groundleſs, and the *Renegado-Jew* had thirty Laſhes with a Whip, which threw him into a miſerable Condition. *Naſhockin* has often told my Author the *Lorainer*, that 'twas the *Czar*'s Intereſt to keep up a friendly Correſpondence with the

King

King of *England* more than with any other Prince in Chriſtendom, and 'twill not be improper in this place to mention ſomething relating to him, which was tranſacted the laſt Year (*Anno* 1666.) Some *Engliſh* Merchants petition'd *Naſhockin* that they might Land ſome Goods which were on Board the Ships lately arriv'd from *England*. He told them *He had a Paper Printed giving an Account of the Plague in* London; *That probably this Merchandize might come out of Houſes that were infected, and they knew very well a Spark might ſet a whole City on Fire; that he thought their way of publiſhing their Infirmities was very ſtrange, adding That if the Poor and Miſerable expoſe their Miſery and Poverty, 'tis to excite Compaſſion and get ſomething by it, but the* Engliſh *by ſpreading it about every where, that the Plague laid their Country waſt, gave the World fair warning not to have any thing to do with them, as Lanthorns or Light-Houſes near the Coaſts, warn'd the Pilots not to come near them for fear of being Ship-wreck'd.*

He ſaid one Day *He wonder'd any Princes ſhould ſend Letters of Recommendation in favour of their Subjects, demanding Juſtice in their Behalf, as if the* Czar *did not know how to deal juſtly by Strangers as well as by his own Subjects. Sure ſuch muſt be very cheap in* Denmark, *continu'd he,*

becauſe

becauſe I receive more from thence than from any other Kingdom. I do not know what they might coſt in England, *but I am very well ſatisfy'd they are all to no purpoſe. The* Muſcovites *do not govern themſelves like the* Engliſh, *by the Cuſtoms of other Countries, and if the* Ruſſian *Dreſs becomes them, theirs will never become the* Ruſſians.

Being once diſcourſing on the Affairs of *England*, and particularly on the ſuccours ſent by the Kings of *France* and *Denmark* to the *Dutch*, againſt the King of *England*, he declar'd *He could not penetrate into the Politicks of thoſe Monarchs, otherwiſe Wiſe and Diſcreet in doing ſo prepoſterous an Action; that in his Opinion, the beſt thing for them had been to have join'd with the King of* England, *and other Princes of* Europe, *to form an Alliance for the rooting up all Republicks, which are good for nothing but to ſerve for an* Aſylum *to Rebels and Hereticks.*

The *Reader* will remember 'twas ſpoke by a Barbarian, who being himſelf a Slave, would be willing to ſee the whole World in the ſame abject condition.

There has lately been a great many *Jews* admitted into the *Czar*'s Court, by means of a *Jewiſh* Surgeon, who pretends to be a *Lutheran*; he was bred up in *Poland*, and advanc'd himſelf in the Court of *Muſcovy*, by furniſhing *Bogdan Matfeidg*

feidg, High-Steward of the Emperors Houſhold, with *Polish* Girls of whom he is very fond. This Miniſter was the Companion of the *Czar*'s Youth, and has inſinuated ſo far into his good Graces, that for ſome time he has been the Reigning Favourite, and manag'd all the Concerns of the Houſhold as he pleas'd. His Wife obſerving his Intrigues, and underſtanding that he met *Polish* Girls and other handſome young Women, Slaves as well as thoſe that were Free, ſhe grew ſo Jealous of him, that her ill Humour became inſupportable to him, and he poyſon'd her to get rid of it. The People murmur'd at the Murder of the Lady, and the *Czar* commanded *Matfeidg* either to quit his Poſts or Marry and leave his Miſtreſſes. 'Tis ſaid he intended to take one of his Concubines to be his Wife. He cannot agree with *Nashockin*, and does not love the *English*, becauſe the *Dutch* have brib'd him to their Intereſt by rich Preſents.

The *Czar* has lately built a *Work-Houſe*, about a League from *Moſcow*, where the Poor are employ'd in Manufactures of Hemp and Flax. The Houſe is beautiful, large, and ſo well contriv'd, that all the Beggars in his Empire may be employ'd there, for whoſe Maintenance the Em-

Emperor has ſetled Lands upon it to a conſiderable value.

The *Czaritſa* manages the Womens Work and employs them for her own Benefit. The *Czar* is every Day buſying himſelf about the increaſe of the Manufactures, to invent new ones, and improve the old. His Workmen coſt little or nothing for their ſubſiſtance, he rather gets than loſes by them, ſo that he ſaves his Revenues ariſing by the *Cabacs*, the *Bagnio*'s and Stove-Chambers, Pitch, Hemp, Flax, Honey, Wax, *Caviare*, Sturgeons, and the ſalted and dry'd Fiſh that comes from *Aſtracan*, *Caſan*, the Lake of *Belſire*, and ſeveral other Lakes and Rivers in his Dominions, particularly in *Siberia* where there are abundance of them.

The *Czar* goes every Year, about the end of *May*, to a Country-Houſe about three Miles from *Moſcow*, call'd *Obnaſanksky* or the *Transfiguration*, to which it is Dedicated in Imitation of what is ſaid by the *Evangeliſt* St. *Luke Chap.* 9. 13. *Maſter it is good for us to be here, let us make three Tabernacles, one for Thee, one for* Moſes, *and one for* Elias, *&c.*

The Emperor order'd ſeveral magnificent Tents to be ſet up. His own was of Cloth of Gold lin'd with *Sables*; that of the *Czaritſa* of Cloth of Silver lin'd with

with Ermine; and thoſe of the Princes and chief Lords, of other Stuff and other Linings, according to their ſeveral Ranks. The *Czar* and *Czaritſa*'s Tents, thoſe of their Children, ten in number, and their five Siſters, were round. In the middle of them ſtands one which ſerves for a Church, and all together make one of the fineſt Sights in the World. Guards are poſted round about them at a Muſket-ſhot diſtance, There are Paliſado's plac'd to keep off the People, none durſt paſs beyond thoſe Bounds, for the *Czar* will not ſuffer his Recreations to be prophan'd by Vulgar Eyes.

When the Emperor goes into the Country for his Pleaſure, no Man is permitted to preſent any Petition to him. A Captain of *White-Ruſſia*, when *Peter Seltico-ro* Governour of the Province, refus'd his Pay for above three Years, not knowing how to procure Juſtice, thought his beſt way was to addreſs himſelf immediately to the Emperor. He came up to him where he was in the Country, and approaching too near his Coach to give him his Petition, the *Czar* miſtruſting he had ſome ill deſign, perhaps that 'twas to Aſſaſſinate him, thruſt him to the Heart with a Cane that had an Iron Spike at

at the end of it. He fell down dead on the ſpot, and the Emperor ordering him to be ſearch'd to ſee what Arms he had about him, there was nothing to be found but the Petition. The Emperor having read it, ſmote his Breaſt, and appear'd mightily concern'd that he had murder'd an innocent Perſon, ſaying, *His Blood ſhall lie at* Selticoro's *Door who was the real cauſe of his Death.* He ſent for him, and not ſatisfy'd with giving him a ſevere Reprimand, baniſh'd him the Court, turn'd him out of all his Places, which he gave to *Nashockin*, with an expreſs command to enquire out *Selticoro*'s Miſdemeanours. This Accident happen'd not long ago, and as yet is not much talk'd of, for 'tis Death to tell what is ſaid or done in the *Czar*'s Court. My Friend going once to view the Work-Houſe, built for thoſe that were to Manufacture Hemp and Flax, juſt as it was finiſh'd, and asking the Workmen what uſe it was deſign'd for, not one of them durſt make any anſwer, tho' they knew what was the deſign of its Building well enough. All that he could get out of them was, *That God and the* Czar *only knew.*

and ſucceed in it more than ſome imagine. They Bribe the Nobility by Preſents to befriend and protect them, and render the *English* contemptible and ridiculous by ſcandalous Libels and abuſive Pictures. They look'd upon the *English* a few Years ſince, as a loſt and undone People. They are ſuch perfect Slaves, that they have a mean Opinion of all thoſe that are in any wiſe Free. The *Dutch* would fare no better, did they not pay dearly for the Friendſhip of the Favourites and Miniſters in *Muſcovy*. They repreſent the *English* Nation by a Lyon without a Tail, with three Crowns on his Head turn'd upſide down; or by Maſtiffs with their Ears and Tails cut off. Theſe fooliſh Droll-Pieces were done at a time when they had no reaſon to ſpeak very well of the *English*, who had begun a War with them for the leaſt Provocation in the World. The two Nations will in time underſtand their common Intereſt better.

The only way for the *English* to recover their Reputation and Trade in *Ruſſia*, and to leſſen the Credit and Commerce of the *Dutch*, would be for them to ſuffer no Body to deal there but ſuch as could Trade with ready Money, and not upon Truſt

Truſt, as their Merchants have done for this twenty Years, and to ſend an Embaſſy to the Czar, to inform him of the flouriſhing condition of the *English* Dominions, of their Strength, Greatneſs, Revenues, and their Colonies in both the *Indies*; to ſhew him Maps of all their Territories over the whole Earth, and Plans of their Forts and Cities. They ought alſo to undeceive *Aſanaſy Nashockin*, to whom their Nation has been vilely miſrepreſented by the *Hollanders*, and to preſent *Cogdan Matfeidg* with ſome Curioſities that he loves. The firſt would make it a point of Policy to encourage them, when he underſtood the true State of the Caſe, and the other would procure them the Emperors favour, of which he is always ſure.

The Authors Arguments on this Subject are of no weight now. The Figure the Engliſh *have made abroad ſince the Revolution, needs no Embaſſy to ſound its Fame, the ends of the Earth have heard of it with Wonder, and the* Czar, *as the Queen of* Sheba *did to* Jeruſalem, *came in Perſon to be a Witneſs of its Glory.*

The Peace which the *Ruſſians* made with the *Poles*, has made 'em prouder than ever. They fancy they are the firſt Nation in the World, and that the Czar has no equal under the Heavens. *A fine Dream, out of which no Body will be at the trouble to wake them, unleſs the preſent King of* Sweden *should think it worth his while.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Siberia *and its Inhabitants; of their* Caviare; *of the* Samojedes *and their Barbarity: And of ſeveral ſtrange Birds and Plants.*

Siberia is a large Province, the greateſt part of which is a *Terra Incognita*, which reaches to the Walls of *Catay*. Beſides what Account of it I had from the Gentleman of *Lorain*, I met with ſeveral Perſons in my Travels in theſe Parts, who had been over a great part of *Siberia*, and on whoſe Relations I could depend; One of them particularly had Travell'd ſo far, that he Traded with the *Chineſes*, and the other,

who was more ignorant, tho' not leſs faithful, aſſur'd me he went ſo far that he ſaw a Sea with Ships and Men aboard 'em, who wore no Hair but on their upper-Lips, who were richly Dreſt, and cover'd all over with Gold and Jewels, their Garments being quite different from thoſe of the *Ruſſians*. By the Deſcription he made of 'em, in all probability they muſt be *Chineſe* Merchants, for the Sea could be no other than that of the *Kaimochites*, on the North-Eaſt part of *Great Tartary*, or that of the Gulph of *Nanquin* in *China*.

The latter brought ſome *Chay* and *Bourdian* out of *Siberia* with him. The former is what we call *Tea*, the latter *Aniſum Indicum Stellatum*, a Phyſical Drug. The *Chineſe* Merchants have taught thoſe of *Siberia* to Drink the *Chay* with Sugar as we do, and they take it to be an excellent remedy for all ſuch as are troubled with any Diſeaſe of the Lungs, with Hypocondriacal *Flatus*'s, or an ill diſpoſition of Stomach. They bring it to them in Papers, containing each a Pound, the weight and Name being written on each Paper in *Chineſe* Characters.

Thoſe

Thoſe that would Travel thro' *Siberia* are ſix Years on their Journey, occaſion'd by the extraordinary Heat and Cold of the Climate, which oblige them to Lodge all the Winter in certain Places, and all the Summer in others. *Tambut*, or as others ſay *Siber*, is the Capital of this vaſt Province. Here the chief *Vayvod* or Vice-Roy reſides. Furs, Marten-Skins eſpecially, which are to be had no where elſe, are the principal Commodity of the Country. They eat dry'd Fiſh inſtead of Bread, which is not to be ſeen in all the Province, unleſs the Traveller carries it along with him. There's plenty of all manner of Fiſh in their Lakes and Rivers, in which they abound. They feed their Dogs with it, and even their Cows in cold Weather, which is exceſſive in *Siberia*, by which means their Milk, generally ſpeaking, has a Fiſhy Taſt.

There's abundance of Filberd Trees of a prodigious bigneſs, and the Kernel of the Nut is of a ſize anſwerable to that of the Tree that bears it.

They

They go a Hunting in Troops for ſix or ſeven Weeks together, cover'd over with three or four Skins, and drawn along in a Sledge by thirty or forty huge Dogs. They lie out in the open Fields all Night in the midſt of VVinter, but they make good Fires about them to warm themſelves, and broil their Fiſh. Their Dogs are very expert in finding out Martens, and when they have found 'em, they never miſs taking them, when once the *Siberians* have ſhot them, which they do with a *Cuſs* ſo dextrouſly that they always wound them in the Noſe, that they might not prejudice the Skin: Beſides if they don't hit 'em in that part, 'tis rare that they catch 'em, for 'tis a ſtrong robuſt Animal, and will eſcape 'em ſometimes tho' he be ſhot quite thro' the Body.

The River *Ob* runs thro' this Province, 'tis very broad, and falls into the *Mare Glaciale*. 'Tis ſtor'd with Sturgeons and *Bellugas*. The latter is a Fiſh twelve or fifteen Foot long; 'tis big and reſembles a Sturgeon, but is not ſo pleaſant taſted when it is eaten as the former: The Meat is whiter than Veal, and as deli-

delicious as Marrow while 'tis freſh. The *Volga* is beſt ſtor'd with that Fiſh and with Sturgeons of all the Rivers in the North. When the Floods come down from the Mountains by the melting of the Snow, and the Stream grows the more rapid, theſe Fiſh ſwallow great Stones on purpoſe to make them the heavier, that they may ſtem the Torrent the better; they throw 'em up again when the Waters abate, and the Current is not ſo ſtrong. 'Tis out of the ſoft Roes of theſe *Belluga*'s and Sturgeons mingled together, that the People of *Aſtracan* make *Caviare*, in this manner: They put their Roes in a heap of Salt, and when they have fermented a little, they ſqueeze 'em and Barrel 'em up. There are ſome who will not ſqueeze 'em at all; that *Caviare* is the moſt delicious, but will not keep ſo long as the other. The *Turks* make it with the Eggs of the Sturgeon, which are Black and Clammy; this the *Ruſſians* call *Fekra*. There is another ſort which is nothing but the Roe of a *Belluga*.

The *Armenians*, who I believe firſt made *Caviare*, do it after another manner. They begin with cleaning the Roes,

Roes and throwing away all that's uſeleſs in them; they Salt and lay them on crooked Planks, that the fat Oily parts of may be drain'd off, after which they pack them up in Barrels and beat 'em down till they're hard. The *Bellaga* has one hundred and fifty Roes, and two hundred weight of Eggs, which the *Armenians* call *Arminsko Fekra.*

The Northern part of *Siberia* is call'd *Samojedia*, or *Tſambeida*, which ſignifies Canibals or Man-Eaters, becauſe the Inhabitants are ſaid to eat all the Priſoners they take in War. They live in round Tents cover'd with Matts and Stags-Skins. They make their Fires in the middle and lie about them. There's but one hole to a Tent beſides the Door, and that is on the top to let out the Smoak. In Summer-time they remove to the Banks of Rivers for the conveniency of Fiſhing. They live altogether upon Fiſh, which they often eat raw. In Summer they dry it to keep for their Winter Store. Young Dogs are one of their niceſt Diſhes.

Their Cuſtoms, Language and Religion are entirely Barbarous. They Worſhip

ſhip the Sun and Moon. Both Men and VVomen are dreſt in Cloaths made of Stags-Skins, the Hair outwards, which they fancy is the warmeſt way of wearing it. The Men have no Beards, the VVomen are abominably Ugly, and ſo hard-favour'd that they can ſcarce be diſtinguiſh'd from the Men, the one being often taken for the other by Strangers; yet as deform'd as they are, they do well enough for the Canibals, who like 'em better than thoſe that we think handſome.

The Riches of the *Samojedians* conſiſt in Stags. There are ſome of 'em ſo Tame that they graze in Troops, ſtand ſtill to be Harneſt, and draw Sledges fourſcore Miles a Day; ſo incredibly ſwift are thoſe Creatures. Before the Inhabitants go a Hunting of Stags, they conſult a Prieſt, who tells them the Place where they ſhall find their Game, and 'tis rare that they are out in their Gueſſes or Conjurations. Young Girls are a conſiderable part of the Fathers VVealth. They are never ſeen till they are betroth'd in Marriage, and that's frequently done when they are ſix or ſeven Years old, for

at

at that Age ſome Body or other will buy them for a certain number of Stags, that they may be ſure to have their Maidenheads. Husbands are there ſo jealous of their VVives, that they lock 'em up cloſer than they do in *Italy*, and when they go a Hunting they have a Device to ſecure them from making 'em Cuckolds in their Abſence.

The Emperor does not think theſe People worthy of Living under his Government. They are liable to no Impoſts, what they pay is voluntarily, and generally is paid in Stags, which from time to time they deliver to the *Czar*'s Officers on the Frontiers.

No Body underſtands their Language nor their Laws, which they execute with great ſecrecy. VVhen they ſell a Stag to a Foreigner, they reſerve the Entrails, and eat even the filthieſt part of them after they have ſqueez'd out the Excrement.

Thoſe who underſtand Magick are the moſt Honourable Perſons among them. They are very dextrous in the Black Art, and exerciſe it very commonly

ly towards Strangers, but they dare not play the *Ruſſians* any Tricks for fear of being ſeverely puniſh'd.

An *Engliſh* Merchant once inviting ſome Canibals to Dinner, one of 'em got ſo Drunk that he could neither ſtand, ſpeak nor ſtir, and his Drunkenneſs continu'd ſo till an Old VVoman touch'd his Forehead and mutter'd ſome VVords in his Ear, after which (if we may give credit to Eye-VVitneſſes from whom I had it) he grew as ſober as ever he was in his Life.

In the South Part of *Siberia* there's a Foreſt call'd *Step*, about ſix or ſeven hundred *Verſts* long, where there are few Rivers, and yet the Soil is extreamly Fertile. One may ride there ſeveral Days Journey in vaſt Fields full of Cherry Trees, not above two or three Foot high, not that they can't grow taller, but they are hindred by the negligence of Travellers, who having made Fires in the middle of the Fields, go their ways without thinking of putting of them out, and the Graſs of the Foreſt being very long and very dry, catches Fire, and burns up every thing that lies

lies in its way. 'Tis no uncommon thing to ſee the Fire burn for thirty or forty *Verſts* of Country together, and purſue Travellers ſo nimbly, that often they have not time to ſave themſelves.

Theſe Cherry-Trees bear red Cherries, fair to look to but ſour. The Fruit of ſome of theſe Trees that have been tranſplanted have prov'd very good.

I have talk'd with ſeveral Perſons, who have ſeen Tulips, Red Roſes, Roſes like Damask-Roſes, Aſparagus larger and finer than ours, Onions, Marjoram, Time, Succory, Sage, Endive or white Succory, and other Flowers, Herbs and Roots in that Foreſt, which we with a great deal of Care raiſe in our Gardens. The Turnip is very frequently met with there. The Canibals have good Carrots and Parſnips in *Samojedia*, and the Merchants of other Nations Export a great deal of Nitre and *Sal Gemmat* from thence.

Elks

Elks are larger here than any where elſe. There is a little Animal call'd Zouricks, and another whoſe Name is Perivoſhicks, which are pretty Creatures. The Zourick is ſomething ſhap'd like a Badger, but of a different likeneſs in the Face; his Skin is of an agreeable Colour, 'tis black, ſleek, and ſpotted a little; his Head is little, and his Legs ſhort, his Back almoſt a Foot broad; they live like Conies in Burrows under Ground. The *Ruſſians* tell a great many Stories of the Wars which theſe Animals wage one with another, of their dexterity in taking Priſoners and ſending the Enemy away into Captivity; that they force their Slaves to fetch in Hay and Oats for them to lay up againſt Winter. 'Tis ſaid their Burrows are very clean, neat, and artfully contriv'd; and if one of 'em dies, the others carry out his Body and bury it elſewhere. Colonel *Crawford*'s Regiment quartering near the Place where they are to be found, theſe Creatures met one Day to a prodigious number, and made ſuch a frightful Noiſe, as terrifi'd the Soldiers and their Horſes ſo much, that they ran away from their Paſture, near the Place, ten miles without ſtopping.

The Perivoſhick's Skin is brown, inclining to yellow, being a mixture of

white and black. The *Ruſſians* make Coats of them, but they are not much valu'd becauſe the Fur is not long nor the Skin warm. I have heard they take a great deal of Pleaſure to carry Squirrels and Ermines from one ſide of a River to the other on their Backs, from whence they derive their Name *Pertvoſhicks*, *i.e.* to carry a thing from Place to Place.

Several Perſons have aſſur'd me that the Squirrels in *Syberia* when they can get nothing to eat on one ſide of the Water, will paſs over to the other on a little piece of Wood, and make uſe of their Tails inſtead of a Sail. If the Wind ſets fair, they get over ſometimes, but if it changes they are infallibly drown'd There are many more Reports, every whit as extravagant, which have been aver'd to be true relating to *Syberia*, but I will not impoſe farther on the Faith of the Reader.

There is a Bird in the Neighbourhood of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan* about the bigneſs of a Woodcock, whoſe Beak and Legs are like a Snipes, and his Neck like a Cock's both for Feather and Size: They fight like the Gamecocks in *England*; they ſtand on their Guard when they put their Beaks to the Ground, and when they can do it to advantage, they leap at the Enemy

Enemy with Vigour, and attack 'em as violently as the *Engliſh* Cocks of the Game do. They are better to eat than Quails; ſometimes one may catch this Bird near *Archangel*, where is alſo to be found a Bird as big as a Black-Bird, reſembling a Hawk; like him he flies after little Birds, takes them, pulls them, cleanſes them, and then eats 'em. There's another ſort of Fowl as tall as a Swan, which is brought from *Aſtracan*, his Body and Feet reſemble thoſe of a Swan, his Neck is ſhort, thicker and ſo wide that he will ſwallow a Fiſh ſix Inches broad. Some Travellers make mention of a Plant in theſe Parts call'd the Lamb, which deſtroys all the Herbs that grow near it, and then dies; but as this Quality agrees very ill with its Name of a Lamb, ſo the Story is accounted fabulous by Perſons of Judgment.

CHAP. XX.

A ſhort Account of Tartary: *Of their Marches, their barbarous Diet; of the* Colmacks; *and of ſome ſorts of Muſhrooms growing in* Ruſſia.

I Don't think 'twill be tireſome to the Reader, before we finiſh our Voyage, to ſee a ſhort but true Relation of *Tartary* which I learnt from the *Lorainer* and other Perſons of good Intelligence. I might make this Account longer, but I am unwilling to lengthen out my Digreſſion beyond this Chapter, after which I ſhall return to my Travels, and with it cloſe my Deſcription of the North. The City of *Crim*, from whence the Prince of *Tartary* is ſtil'd the Grand *Crim*, is the Capital of his Empire. 'Tis ſcituated on the *Tartarian* Sea, built of Stone and Brick, and encompaſs'd with ſtrong Walls. The *Tartars* are Tributaries to the *Turks*, and 'tis not long ſince, that the *Czar* of *Muſcovy* paid the *Crim* of *Tartary* Homage, being oblig'd by Oath to feed the *Crim*'s Horſe with Oats out of his Cap. The City of *Moſcow* alſo paid

paid the *Tartarian* a Tribute of Ten Thouſand Coats made of Stag's Skins: The *Muſcovites* have for ten years paſt refus'd paying it, alledging that the *Tartars* made void the Treaty by Inroads into *Ruſſia*, and Robberies on their Borders. Indeed they are very troubleſome Neighbours; if they are routed they vaniſh in a Moment, and diſperſe one by one; notwithſtanding which they meet again at Night at the Place of Rendezvous, and the next Day renew their Incurſions with as much Violence as ever. They will march fourſcore Miles a day, in which time they change Horſes thrice, each of 'em having three or four Horſes. If any one of their Cattel dies, either of Fatigue or Sickneſs, they cut his Fleſh out in Pieces and diſtribute it among their Comrades, who eat it with as much *Guſto* as we do Beef or Mutton. They often devour it raw, but their common way of Cooking it, is to put it between the Saddle and the Back of the Horſe on which the *Tartar* rides, and that ſoddens the Fleſh enough for them to feaſt upon. Thoſe Horſes that are in the Fields are very difficult to be caught, becauſe 'tis almoſt impoſſible to take them from their Company.

If a *Tartar* falls ſick, they give him Mare's Milk and the Blood of a

Horſe, whoſe Veins they open on purpoſe.

The Reaſon why they eat no Bread nor Salt is, for that they believe Bread to be courſe feeding, which renders ſuch as eat it heavy and unactive, and that Salt is bad for the Eyes.

'Tis certain their Sight is better than any Peoples in the World; they can ſee forty or fifty Miles an end, when the Proſpect will permit it, and can diſcern a ſingle Man at the ſame diſtance, where the *Ruſſian* cou'd not perceive a Troop of *Tartars*.

They are excellent Horſemen, they ride with a looſe Rein, lift themſelves up in their Stirrups and ſhoot backwards on their Enemies that purſue them.

The *Colmack Tartars*, among whom *Tamerlane* was born, have a large extent of Ground about them; they dwell in Tents and live in their Paſtures; they are bigger and more ſwarthy than the *Crim-Tartars*, and are not at all like 'em in the Face; ſome part of their Country is ſubject to the Emperor of *Ruſſia*.

Their Women are as fit for War, and love it as well as their Men; lately an Army of them defeated the *Crim-Tartars* who had carry'd away ſome of their Children into Captivity.

The

The *CrimT-artars* are flat-Fac'd, their Eyes are little and ſunk into their Heads; their Foreheads are narrow, their Shoulders low and broad; they are middle-ſiz'd, as to their Shapes and their Make, every way ſo ſingular that 'tis eaſie to diſcover a *Tartar* at firſt ſight, among a hundred other Men.

They flat the Noſes of their Children as ſoon as they are born, thinking it to be a piece of Folly to let their Noſes ſtand in their light: They are all *Mahometans*, they laugh at the Worſhip the *Muſcovites* pay their St. *Nicholas*, and maintain that they had better adore the Sun, who is a glorious Body, the Life and Light of the World, than fall down before wooden Images. *See*, ſay they, *What your Gods come to, when the Painting is worn out, you throw them into the River with a Coptack or two and a little bit of* Olibanus, *Thus they ſail down the* Volga *to the* Caſpian *Sea, there we take 'em up, dry them, and burn 'em to roaſt our Horſe-fleſh by the Fire. Are not theſe very fine Gods that ſerve us inſtead of Faggots, and that can't reſiſt thoſe that will deſtroy them?*

Before I have done with my Relation of *Ruſſia*, I will ſay a word or two of ſeveral ſorts of Muſhrooms that grow there and no where elſe in that Form. There are ſeven which are moſt re-

markable by their Figures and Qualities.

The ſort call'd *Rizhiees*, are a little black and red, and ſpring up in a Night in the Marſhes.

The *Smotzskies* or Honey-Muſhrooms, which *Gerard* calls *Fungi Farinoſi*, reckoning them among Poyſons, are excellent and very dear in *Ruſſia*. 'Tis the moſt delicate Diſh that is brought to the Tables of Perſons of the higheſt Quality; they put it in Soups and Pyes; they come up before the other ſorts in *April* and *May*.

The *Gribbeys* are of a brown Colour, or rather of a black Yellow; the Tail of one is like a *Pilaſter*, and ſwells out in the middle, they come up after the *Smotzskies*.

The *Volnitzis* are brown and black, mixt with red, and grow ſharp at top.

The *Grouzhdys* are the biggeſt ſort of all of 'em, as hollow as a Honey-Comb, and whiter than a Tulip when they are dead: Before they are boyl'd they are full of Juice, ſo tart and bitter that 'twill bliſter the Mouth of thoſe that taſt it: I thought I ſhou'd have dy'd immediately after I had put a Sup of it within my Lips.

The *Maſtamicks* are ſo call'd from *Maſla*, which ſignifies Butter, Oil, Sewet, or any thing that is fat and oily. *Maſla*

Canova

Canova, is Milk or Butter, *Denavanna Maſla* is Oil of Olives, or rather the Oil of a Tree, for *Denava* is in *Engliſh* a Tree. The *Maſlamicks* are brown and large, and grow in *July*.

The *Dorkſhonicks* are white, large and ſpongy, and are thought to be a deadly Poyſon. There are ſo many ſorts of Muſhrooms beſides, and ſo many of thoſe I have mention'd, that I have been told a thouſand Waggon-Loads a Year are brought to *Moſcow*. The Poor live upon them, and the Rich make 'em a ſecond Courſe: Almoſt all the *Ruſſian* Muſhrooms are good to eat, and there are very few of thoſe Kinds which the *Botaniſts* call venomous.

This is the Sum of what I can inform my ſelf relating to *Muſcovy*, either from my Friend's Memoirs, my own Obſervations, or the Report of Credible Travellers: I believe 'twill give Content, becauſe the Matter is new, no body having ſaid ſo much of it before: I ſhall now return to my *Voyage*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Author's Departure from the Exiles, and his Arrival at Papinogorod: *Of his Departure thence, and his Arrival in* Samojeda, *with a Deſcription of the Country, Trade, and the Inhabitants.*

I Have in a former Chapter mention'd our Adventure with the poor baniſh'd Gentlemen, whom we took our leaves of with reciprocal Tears, and mounting our Sledges, travell'd on three hours before we met with any Houſe or Habitation: We then diſcover'd five or ſix Huts together, in which were about a dozen Perſons: We ask'd of 'em by our Interpreter if they had any thing to Truck for our Money or Brandy; they brought us out what Skins they had, and we dealt with them for 'em.

We follow'd the Courſe of the River *Petzora*, which gives Name to the Town, and near the Banks of it came to ſmall Villages pretty often; in ſome of 'em we found Inhabitants, in others none: Where we met with any Body to Trade with us we bought their Furs, with

with Money ſome, but more with Brandy. They wou'd not part with their Sables, for fear of being detected by the Governour of *Papinogorod*, whither we were going, who always ſearches whatever Merchandize is bought thither, to ſee if there are no Sables among it. We croſs'd the Mountains which divide *Borandia* from *Syberia*, that was one of the worſt Journeys we had in all our Undertaking, thoſe Mountains being difficult to paſs, and ſo barren that no Creature, Man or Beaſt can live upon them: Beſides, they are almoſt always cover'd with Snow, and towards the Aſcent and Deſcent, there are ſuch vaſt numbers of Bears and white Wolves, that we were afraid of our Lives, expecting every minute when they would have fal'n upon us, tho' perhaps we need not have been in ſo much fear, for thoſe Animals were probably as much terrify'd at us, as we at them. They fled before us, ſome on one hand, and ſome on the other, miſtaking us by the glittering of our Arms to be Hunters and not Merchants. We were twelve hours croſſing the Mountains, and our Cattle had much ado to haul us over'em; at laſt we reach'd the Deſcent, and arriv'd at a Village in *Syberia*, where the Inhabitants were all cloath'd in Bear-skins the Hair outwards, having Linen

Linen Shirts on, and close Buskins, by which we perceiv'd we were come among People that were not so barbarous as those we had parted from. They in effect receiv'd us more civilly, ask'd whence we came, and whither we were going. We eat and drank together of the best we had and they had; ours was Bisket and Brandy, theirs dry'd Wolf-flesh and Bears-flesh, Gingerbread and Spirits. We bought all their Furs, except their Sables, with ready Money; we rested in their Houses, which were built after the manner of the Laplanders; we slept on Bear-skins, after having drank each of us a Cup of Brandy; when we awoke, we got upon our Sledges, and travell'd without any farther Dealings for twenty hours together, till we came to *Papinogorod*.

The Governour of the Place hearing of our Arrival, order'd us to come to his Castle to examine for what and from whence we came. We waited upon him as we were commanded and entred the Castle. He saluted us very friendly, and our Accountant, who understood the *Muscovite* Language, gave a satisfactory Answer to all the Questions he demanded of him.

When he knew that we were *Danes* and Dealers, whose Business it was to buy Furs, he entertain'd us as hand-

handſomely as he cou'd; and to ſhew us that he had a great kindneſs for, and confidence in us, he ſent for his Wife to come and ſee us which ſhe did, bringing in one hand a Bottle of Brandy, and in the other a Silver Cup, according to the *Muſcovite* Faſhion; as alſo a Plate of Gingerbread which a Maid brought after her. We ſaluted her, as is the Cuſtom of the Country; by bowing our Heads; ſhe preſently unty'd the knot of her Smock-Sleeve, and let it fall down to the ground; our Supercargo preſently took it up and kiſs'd it, our Accountant did the like and ſo did I. Then ſhe furl'd it up again with her left hand, and taking the Bottle and Cup, which ſhe had laid down to pay this Ceremony, gave to each of us a Brimmer of Brandy, and a piece of Gingerbread, her ſelf ſtanding at the end of the Table by the Side of her Husband. She then return'd to her own Chamber, and the Governour afterwards regal'd us with good Cheer. When we had done Supper, we were conducted to our Lodgings prepared in the Caſtle, and, conſidering the Country, lay in very good Beds.

We ſlept about ſeven hours, and then roſe, which the Governour having notice of by one of his Servants, he got up and

and came to ſee us, bringing alſo a Bottle of Brandy with him: One of his Domeſticks held another in his hand, and fill'd us out a great Cup for our Morningſ Draught; we each of us drank one, and after that we fell to Buſineſs. The Governour demanded if we wou'd buy his Skins, our Supercargo ſaid he wou'd if he lik'd them, and cou'd agree on the Price. His Furs were extraordinary well choſen; and tho' they were the deareſt we met with in all our Travels, yet they were the beſt worth our Money. Having ſeen 'em, bought, and paid for them, he order'd one of his Men to call in ſome of the Inhabitants who had Skins to diſpoſe of, but he wou'd not ſuffer them to ſell one ſingle Skin till he had driv'n his own Bargain.

While our Supercargo was dealing with the Governour, and his Neighbours, I walk'd up and down the Town. 'Tis ſituated in a very fine Commodious Place in a little Plain, the Country about it fruitful; 'tis ſurrounded with high Mountains, and near it runs a large River, well ſtock'd with Fiſh. The Houſes are built very ordinarily. They are low, and the Walls are of Wood or Mud, chalk'd between the Beams with Moſs. The Town is pav'd with pieces of Timber laid cloſe together.

The

The People of Faſhion in *Papinogorod*, are dreſs'd in Breeches and Stockings of Cloth, and a long Robe over 'em of the ſame which comes down to their Toes. The Sleeves are made as ſtrait as poſſible, ſome of one Colour, and ſome of another. Their Shoes are like the *Polander's*, they are rather Boots than Shoes, are button'd a top, and the Leather is dy'd ſome of it Blue, ſome Red, and ſome Yellow. Upon their Heads they wear a Cloth Cap, lin'd and border'd, ſome with black Fox-skin Fur, ſome with Ermines, and ſome with Sables, as is repreſented in Figure 9. As for the Women, they are Beautiful, Fair and Fat. Their Hair is of a Light Chefnut Colour, and their Mein Gallant for *Muſcovites*. Their Robe or upper Garment like the Mens came down to their Toes. 'Tis alſo made of Cloth, either red, blue, or violet Colour. The Shape of it reſembles our *Juſteaucorps*, 'tis lin'd with white Fox-skins or Sable. They have long ſleeves ty'd to it, for they can't put their Arms into 'em, becauſe their Smock-Sleeves are of ſuch a prodigious length; ſome of 'em are 5 Ells long; they are made of fine Calico, and plaited up from their Wriſts to their Shoulders: Their Head-dreſs is an oval Cap; their Hair is twiſted with Ribbons and hangs a long way down

down their Backs; their Shoes are made of Ruſſia Leather, and they have a Girdle of Pearl pretty large round their Waſtes. See the 10*th* Figure.

Thoſe that are Natives of *Syberia* differ either as to their Manners or Way of Living from the *Samojedes*, *Borandians*, and other Natives of the North.

All the *Muſcovites* are *Nicolaitans* by Religion. They are grave, robuſt, ſwift, and dextrous at ſhooting with the Croſsbow. There are no *Chicaneurs* or Raſcally Attorneys in *Ruſſia*; no Villains who rob the Poor out of Pretence to recover their Right, who ruin the Fatherleſs by feign'd Attempts to ſave their Inheritances, and enrich their own Families with the Spoils of their Neighbours. The *Muſcovite* Law is all Equity, and all their Courts of Juſtice, Courts of *Chancery*; but there is ſuch care taken to expedite Cauſes that there's no occaſion of Complaint given, as in ſome Countries who pretend to be more Polite. Falſe Witneſſes are ſeverely puniſh'd; ſo are Traytors, Robbers, and, if the Friends of the Deceas'd proſecute, Murderers. The *Ruſſians*, eſpecially in *Syberia*, are ignorant ſelf-intereſted Drunkards, churliſh, and ſo jealous, that their Wives are almoſt always lock'd up in their Chambers, nor dare they ſtir out when they are

are more at liberty, unleſs they are commanded by their Husbands; they are ſo far their Slaves that they are afraid to ſhew the leaſt kind Look or Action towards Strangers, and if their Husbands don't beat 'em, 'tis ſo cuſtomary to do it that they believe they don't love 'em.

When we had bought up all the Furs we lik'd at *Papinogorod*, conſiſting of White Wolf-skins, White Fox-skins, Black of the ſame, *Lynx's*, Sables, for ſome we had of the Governor by Stealth, Ermines, and grey Squirrels, we pack'd up, and with what we bought at *Petzora* we had enough to load one Sledge, and almoſt half another. We had ſtill ſome Tobacco, and about five thouſand Ducats left. Wherefore our Supercargo and Accountant, reſolv'd to go farther to get more Furs, and to return to our Ships thro' *Samojeda*. Our Brandy falling ſhort, we bought the beſt the Governor our Hoſt had, and bargain'd with him for Proviſions ſufficient to laſt twelve days, and for Rain-deer to carry us to our Journeys end. When we had quite done dealing, and paid our Money, we muſt have a drunken Bout at parting, without which there's no getting away from a Houſe in *Ruſſia*: We eat and drank for

ten hours together, and then lay down to reſt eight more. When we got up, and had harneſs'd our Rain-deer, bal'd up and loaded our Merchandiſe and Proviſions, we mounted our Sledges, took our Leaves of our Hoſt, and departed. We ran ſeventeen hours, and all the way that we went, bought up what Furs we cou'd light on of the *Syberians*. We then croſt the *Riphæan* Mountains in ſix hours more; after which we enter'd *Samojeda*, a deſolate Mountainous Country, full of Juniper-Trees, Pine-Trees and Firs; it abounds in Moſs as well as Snow. Wolves, Bears, and Foxes all white, we met every moment not to our ſmall Terror.

When we deſcended the Mountain *Stolpohen*, out of which riſes the River *Borſagatz*, we came to eight or nine Houſes, where we ſtop'd, as well to bait our Cattle, as to reſt our Selves. We truck'd with the Inhabitants Brandy for white and black Wolf and Fox-skins, Caſtor, and Otter-skins; they had ſeveral dozen of Ermines, which they wou'd not ſell us on any Terms, notwithſtanding our *Borandian* Guide aſſur'd them, with a thouſand Proteſtations, that there was no manner of Danger, we being Traders that were going to our Ships,

and

and cou'd not be ſearch'd before we got to the Coaſts, becauſe we were not to paſs thro' any place where there were Officers to ſearch for prohibited Goods. They would not hearken to us till we had drank them all down, and when the Liquor was got up into their Heads, they grew bold, brought out their Sables, and ſold us the beſt and moſt that we pick'd up in all our Journey. We ſtaid to reſt our ſelves in one of the chief Hutts in the Village. The Maſter of the Houſe, his Wife and Children lay all together higle-de-pigledey, and we among 'em on Bears-skins: After we had ſlep'd four or five Hours, I awoke at a noiſe our Hoſt made to waken his Family: They all roſe and went out. I had the Curioſity to obſerve them; I follow'd them at a little diſtance, and perceiv'd, they fell down all on their Knees behind the Cottage, lifting up their Hands and Eyes to Heaven to adore the Sun, whom they believe to be God.

The *Samojedes* are ſhorter and thicker than either the *Laplanders* or *Borandians*. Their Heads are big, their Faces flat, as are alſo their Noſes; they have ſcarce any Hair at all, and are as ſwarthy as the Ground itſelf: Their Dreſs is a round Cap fur'd like a Lamb-skin, a pair of Breeches

and a white Bear-Skin Coat that comes down no farther than their Knees: They tie it about their middles with a Girdle, four Inches broad. Their Shoes and Stockings are made of the ſame ſort of Skin, the Hair outwards; under their Shoes they wear a ſort of Skates, two Foot long, made like a *Gondola*, with which they ſlide prodigiouſly faſt on the Snow that lies almoſt always on the Mountains. Inſtead of a Cloak they hang a Bear's Skin, with black Hair upon it, over their Shoulders, the Feet dangling down at the four Corners of it. It hangs more on the left ſide than on the right, to leave their Hands at liberty for the management of their Bows. Upon this Skin they tie their Quivers as is to be ſeen by the 11th Figure.

The *Samojedian* Women are uglier than the Men, they will endure a great deal of hardſhip, and take care to breed up their Children well in the handling their Bows, at which they teach 'em to be very dextrous. They are dreſt like Men, only their upper Garment is a little longer; their Caps are the ſame with the Mens, and all the difference in their Head Dreſſes is, that the Women have a Lock of Hair twiſted, which hangs down on their Shoulders; at the End there's

there's a Knot of Ribbons made of the Rind of a Tree, and that reaches down to their Heels. This is all their Finery: They hunt as well as the Men, and are arm'd with Bows and Arrows as they are, which appears by the 12th Figure.

The Husbands are true to their Wives, and the Wives to their Husbands: If any one among them is found guilty of Adultery, either Man or Woman, the Criminal is immediately ſton'd to Death.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Author's arrival at Zembla; *Of the* Zemblians *and their Idol* Fetizo: *Of the Scurvy frequent in thoſe Parts: Of fiſhing for the Sea-Horſe, and the danger in doing it.*

HAving travers'd *Samojeda*, parted with all our Wares, and loaded our ſelves with Skins, we return'd to *Borandia*. In our return we met with no Adventures worth remarking; we made what haſte we could, and reach'd the Coaſts of *Borandia*. In twelve days after our departure from *Papinogrod*, our Ships rendeſvous'd at a Place on that Shoar where we had appointed them to meet us. We loaded all our Merchandiſe aboard them, paid off our *Borandian* Guide, and embark'd. We weigh'd Anchor two Hours after, and ſail'd with a fair Wind for *Zembla*, where we arriv'd the next Day in the Afternoon. We caſt Anchor in a Place near which we ſpy'd upon the Shoar a Company of about thirty Perſons, with Quivers at their Backs, on their Knees worſhipping the Sun that

was

was then about ſetting. Our Maſters and Super-Cargo conſulted together what courſe they ſhould take to come at the Speech of 'em. They thought 'em to be more wild than any we had yet ſeen, and that 'twould be difficult to get them to deal with us. They reſolv'd to ſend out three Long-Boats with ten Men well arm'd in each, to defend themſelves in caſe they were attack'd; I was commanded to make one among them. We made to Shoar; when we came about a quarter of a Mile off Land, All thoſe Savages who were ſtill on their Knees, got up and let fly their Arrows at us; after which they ran away like ſo many Stags before their Hunters. They ſhot at us when we were at too great a diſtance from 'em to receive any hurt by their Arrows.

We landed and purſu'd them to the Place whither we thought they were fled, in hopes that we might be able to catch one or other of 'em, which however was not to be done: We loſt ſight of 'em, and cou'd not tell which way they were gone, yet we follow'd 'em till we came near ſome Mountains cover'd with Snow. We advanc'd farther into the Country, where on a ſmall Hillock we perceiv'd a piece of Wood cut out in the Figure of a Man, with wretched Sculpture. Before it

were two *Zemblians* on their Knees, their Arms lying by them; they were worſhiping this Idol, as the others on the Shoar were adoring the Sun. They fled from us, and it growing Night we did not care to purſue them very far; they ran into a Fir-Wood, and we thought 'twoud be in vain to go after them: We therefore concluded 'twas our beſt way to return to our Ships and make a Report of what we had ſeen and done. This Idol is call'd *Fetizo*, and reſembles the Figure 13, with the two *Zemblians* adoring it. One of our Maſters had been there before, and told me, *That the Devil enter'd the Idol ſometimes, and from it pronounc'd his Infernal Oracles.*

Seven or Eight Hours after I was got aboard again, I was taken with a violent Pain in my Head and a Vomiting, which laſted three Hours; after that I had a ſore Throat, inſomuch that I cou'd hardly ſwallow any thing; The Glands were ſwollen to a high degree; I felt a great Ebullition of Blood, and an Itching over all my Body; my Gums ſwell'd and bled mightily, my Teeth ſhook, and I was ſo faint, that I cou'd ſcarce keep upon my Legs. I loſt my Stomach, and eat nothing, became extream weak and had a Fever almoſt always upon me; my Breath was ſhort and offenſive, I was very dry, and to quench my Thirſt I often

often drank Water and Vinegar. Perceiving my Diſtemper continu'd the two following Days, and conſidering that 'twas caus'd partly by exceſſive Cold, and partly by eating ſalt Meats, which had enflam'd my pituitous Glands in ſuch manner that my Phlegm had infected my other Humours, inſtead of Oxycrat or Water and Vinegar, I reſolv'd to take ſome Brandy and Syrup of Liquoriſh, of which I drank a Spoonful every Hour. I eat no ſalt Fiſh, all my Food was freſh. I gargl'd my Mouth ſometimes with Brandy, and ſometimes with Vinegar, to ſtrengthen my Gums, and rub'd my Teeth with *Mel Roſat.* The greateſt part of our Ships Crew were taken ill of the ſame Diſeaſe as my ſelf; I preſcrib'd 'em the ſame Remedy, and in fifteen days time I cur'd them and my ſelf too.

Our other Ships Crews were as much troubled with it as our own. Their Surgeons did whatever their Art ſuggeſted to them, by way of Bleeding and Purging, to cure them; but thoſe Remedies rather encreas'd than cur'd the Diſeaſe. Two of their Sailors dy'd of it, and one of their Accomptants was likely to die, as alſo ſeveral other Mariners, upon which I was ſent for to a Conſultation. I advis'd them to do as I had done, and to give over Purging and Bleeding, which

are

are mortal in that Caſe. 'Twas obſerv'd in a very hard Winter in *France*, that this Diſtemper, which ſome took for the Plague, was occaſion'd by the Rigour of the Seaſon, and that ſeveral Perſons dy'd immediately upon Bleeding, which is of no uſe in Cacochymical Diſtempers, or in Plenitudinaries. According to the Method of the *Botaniſts*, Bleeding and Purging in ſuch Caſes are good for nothing but to weaken the Sight, to injure the Nerves, to conſume the radical Moiſture, to diminiſh the natural Heat, to deſtroy Nature, and in ſhort, to diſlodge Men's Souls out of their Bodies, ſooner than they ought to go, and to fill the Church-yards. However I wou'd not be underſtood to ſpeak againſt Bleeding in ſome Diſtempers; 'tis good in all hot and Plethorick Caſes, provided 'tis not us'd above twice or thrice.

Being once at *Algiers*, ſeveral of our Crew were taken with this Diſeaſe, which I call the Scorbute or Scurvy; their Glands were ſo ſwoln, that one wou'd have thought they had a piece of Fleſh in their Throats. They had the ſame Symptoms as I myſelf had on the Coaſt of *Zembla*; their Flegm was ſharp and corroſive, it infected their other Humours, and eſpecially the Maſs of their Blood, as the Pox does, which is a Species of it; and

and I was forc'd to deal with my Patients, as if they had really been pox'd, not with *Mercury*, which by its cold, moiſt and venemous Quality exaſperates the Humours of the Body, and infects the Ventricles of the Brain, inſtead of cleanſing them, cauſing a Flux at the Mouth, by which without Danger one may cure the Itch, but not the Pox, the latter being caus'd by a cold, moiſt venemous Humour, oppoſite to the nature of Mercury; and this the Mercurialiſts cannot deny, as may be ſeen in my *Treatiſe of the Pox*. There I have ſhewn the way of curing that Diſeaſe with ſuch Secrecy, that thoſe the Patient converſes with, ſhall know nothing of the Matter. The Scurvy, with which Sea-faring Men are ſo troubled, proceeds from groſs Vapours, which come from the bad Water they drink, the bad Bread, and the bad Victuals they eat; the melancholy, cloſe and foul Air which they breath, and the Infection of Scorbuticks, only to be remedy'd by Cordials.

I cou'd not forbear making this Reflection, which relating to the Diſtempers incident to ſuch as go the Northern Voyage, I hope will meet with a favourable Reception.

We ſtay'd ſixteen Days on that part of the Coaſt of *Zembla*, where we at firſt caſt

caſt Anchor when our Crews were all cur'd except three or four who were on the mending Hand. Our Maſters ſeeing there was a fair and freſh Gale, reſolv'd to ſail to *Weygats*, to fiſh for *Walrus*, the Fiſh by us call'd a *Sea-Horſe*. We ſail'd about ſix Leagues, then cruis'd up and down for the convenience of our Fiſhing: We kept near Shoar, and put out our Long-Boats and ſent our Harponiers and Fiſhers in them, eight in each, without reckoning the Rowers. We were three Days a fiſhing without taking any thing; at laſt we ſpy'd two large Fiſh approaching us; one of 'em had a Horn in his Forehead that was of a good length. our Fiſhers prepar'd to ſeize him; they came within a Stones caſt of him; our Harponiers threw their Harping-Irons at him, ſome on one ſide and ſome on the other, letting looſe the Ropes by which they were faſten'd, and then they got off as nimbly as they cou'd for fear of the Monſter. See a Draught of this Fiſhing in Figure 14.

When our Harponiers and Fiſhers ſaw that the Harping-Irons ſtuck in the Fiſh, they made towards our Ships ſides, being ſure they had him faſt, becauſe he ſwam above Water, which is a Sign of his Weakneſs. They drew him nearer and

and nearer by the Ropes that were faſten'd to the Harping-Irons. The Monſter endur'd all without ſtrugling; he had loſt ſo much Blood he had no ſtrength left. The Fiſhers doing their Office cut off his Head, which we kept, and flung the Body into the Sea, it being neither good to eat nor to turn into Oil. People fiſh for the Sea-Horſe meerly for the ſake of his Teeth, which does as well as Ivory upon all occaſions, where that Bone is made uſe of; 'tis ſomewhat in a Pound dearer, being whiter than Elephants Teeth, and is not ſo apt to turn yellow as Ivory is.

The Horn of the Sea-Horſe we took was ten Foot long, 'twas very heavy, winding and as big as a Man's Arm; near the Shoulder 'twas very ſmall, and ſharp at top, growing bigger and bigger downwards to the Root.

One of our Boats coming too cloſe to the other Fiſh, thinking to make ſure of him, the Monſter as ſoon as he felt the Iron in his Sides, ſtruck his Tail againſt the Boat with ſuch violence, in ſtrugling to free himſelf, that it overſet the Boat, and the other Boats were ſo far off, that before they cou'd get thither to take up the Men, two of them were drown'd, for whoſe Deaths we were troubled, the Prize being by no means a Recompence

to

to us for the Loſs. The Fiſh was taken and his Head cut off as the others was. I ſaw it had no Horn, but to make amends for that his Teeth were whiter and larger.

We cruis'd up and down four Days, before we ſpy'd any more Fiſh, wherefore we reſolv'd to change our Station; as we were preparing to depart, we ſaw four of the ſame Fiſh which ſeem'd to be bigger than thoſe we caught, ſo we furl'd our Sails and made our Harponiers go out in our Long-Boats with the other Fellows that were employ'd in the Fiſhery; we took three of them, one eſcap'd us. That which our Fiſhers brought aboard the Ship I belong'd to, had no Horn, neither had the other two any; twelve Hours after we diſcover'd five Fiſh more. Our Harponiers and Fiſhers got preſently into their Boats to endeavour to take 'em, eſpecially one of 'em, which had a Horn in his Forehead; but tho' the Fellows did whatever Men cou'd do to catch 'em, three of them made their eſcapes, among which was the horn'd Fiſh; the other two were taken and had their Heads cut off. Two Hours after we ſpy'd three more, our Fiſhers went out after them, they took one whoſe Head was brought aboard us, and was ſo big, that each of his great Teeth weigh'd 29 Pounds. Two

Two Days after we ſaw ſeven or eight of theſe Fiſh, and a horn'd one among them. We put out all our Boats, and our Fiſhers were ſo fortunate as to catch five of them, of which one was the horn'd Fiſh; 'twas our Lot to have him; his Horn was like that of the firſt Fiſh we caught, but not ſo heavy nor ſo large, it being ſcarce ſeven Foot long.

We ſtay'd there five Days longer, and ſeeing nothing all that while, took hold of a North North-Eaſt Wind which ſprung up, and ſail'd towards *Weygats*, in hopes to paſs thoſe Streights: We kept our Courſe pretty well for Thirty ſix Leagues, but then we cou'd go no farther, becauſe of the huge Pieces of Ice that oppos'd our Paſſage, and the Moun tainof Ice cover'd with Snow, call'd *Pater Noſters*, which lye at the Mouth of the *Mare glaciale*, the frozen Sea, and the great Sea of *Tartary*: If a Ship cou'd enter thoſe dreadful Streams, the Paſſage to the *Eaſt Indies* wou'd not be above a quarter ſo long as 'tis now, thro' the *Atlantick* Ocean. For this Reaſon this Streight is call'd *Weygats*, in *Engliſh* a Place one cannot paſs thro'.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Boldneſs of the Bears on the Coaſt of Zembla; *Of the taking two* Zemblians *in a* Canoe; *An Account of ſtrange Birds, and of the Inhabitants of that Iſland.*

WE caſt Anchor in thoſe Streights near the Shoar, on the Eaſtern Coaſt of *Zembla*. One of our Seamen landing there, and going about his neceſſary occaſions, a Bear came behind him and ſtruck him down with his Paw, and wou'd certainly have devour'd him had we not perceiv'd it. We immediately fir'd a Fuſee, and by good Fortune ſhot him dead on the Spot; otherwiſe the poor Sailor wou'd not ſo eaſily have got out of his Clutches. He was not ſoon eas'd of his fears, and the reſt of his Comrades were ſo terrifi'd by his Example, that they durſt not venture aſhoar. A little while after there came three Bears to our Ships ſides and ſtrove to come aboard; we cut off the Paws of one of 'em with our Hatchets, and ſhot the other with a Musquet. While we were diſpatch-

diſpatching theſe two, the third mounted the ſides of our Ship and enter'd it. A Sailor who ſtood near him, cry'd out as if he was about to be devour'd, and well he might, for the Bear was at his Heels. We all took up Oars and pieces of Timber, by which we knock'd him down: Others ſhot at him, and two more that were ſwimming towards us and kill'd them; We thought this deſtruction of 'em wou'd hinder any more coming near us, but we were miſtaken, for four or five hours afterwards, we ſpy'd eight or ten upon the Ice, who taking the Water ſwam towards us, which oblig'd us to handle our Arms and fire at them: We aim'd ſo well, that not one of 'em eſcap'd us.

More and more ſtill approaching from the Mountains, as if they declar'd War with us, we reſolv'd to retreat before ſuch a terrible Enemy. We weigh'd Anchor and return'd towards the Place where we firſt anchor'd, on the Weſtern Shoar of *Zembla*.

After fifteen Hours Sail, we got out of the Streight by favour of an Eaſterly Wind: We had much ado to avoid running againſt Rocks of Ice that lay in our way. At the Mouth of the Streight there is an Iſland which look'd very beautiful and green; 'twas cover'd with Moſs, Fir

and Juniper-Trees; ſome of our Crew went aſhoar, and ſaw a ſort of Birds there ſo big they cou'd hardly fly. They came and told us what they had ſeen, upon which I deſir'd leave to go aſhoar with about forty Men, detach'd from the three Crews, to hunt thoſe Birds and make Diſcoveries. We kill'd about ſixty of 'em, ſome we ſhot, and ſome we knock'd down with Clubs; their Carcaſſes we carry'd aboard with us.

The Maſter of our Ship call'd theſe Birds *Penguins*; they are not much higher than Swans but a great deal bigger. Their Eyes are large, ſparkling, and almoſt as big as a Half-Crown. They are ſharp Beak'd, of a brown Colour; their Feet are cloſe like thoſe of a Gooſe, and at their Gullet there hangs ſomething like a Bag about a Foot long: It begins juſt under their Beaks and comes down to their Breaſts, widening as it lengthens: 'Tis not unlike an Urinal, only 'tis bigger. In this Bag they put their Victuals, and take it out of it when they have a mind to eat, as may be ſeen by Figure 15.

We were forc'd to skin 'em before we cou'd eat them their Skins being very tough; and we had much ado to pull them and dreſs them: The Fleſh was extraordinary good; it taſtes like that of

of a Wild-Duck only 'tis fatter: We eat heartily of it, and had not had such a Feast in all our Voyage.

We stay'd at Anchor off of the Island, where we caught the *Pengains* two Days, and then a South-East Wind springing up we weigh'd again, and held on our Course North North-West: In a few Hours we got out of the Streight, then the Wind veer'd, and we coasted it along to the *High Cape*, where we arriv'd in about thirty Hours. That Cape is not far from the Place where we saw the *Zemblians* adoring the Sun, of whom I have made mention in the last Chapter.

His *Danish* Majesty having commanded our Captains and Officers to bring off some *Zemblians*, if they cou'd possibly do it, that he might learn of them what was the Growth and Riches of their Country: They dropt Anchor and resolv'd to do their utmost to obey the King's Command. As soon as we were ready, some of us went afhoar in our Long-Boats to see what we cou'd discover, there were thirty Persons in all, of whom I made one.

We had scarce got over the Ships side, before We spy'd a *Zemblian* in his Canoe, about half a League off Land, who seeing us making towards him, row'd so nimbly, that 'twas impossible for us to

get up with him. As ſoon as he ſet Foot on ſhore he took up his Canoe and ran away with it on his Shoulder, ſo ſwiftly that we perceiv'd 'twoud be a difficult matter for us to overtake him. He held his Dart in his Hand all the while, and yet did not ſeem to be incumber'd in his Flight. See the Repreſentation of this in the 16th Figure

We landed and purſu'd him towards a Hill which we ſaw him mount, but he was nimbler than we, and 'twas in vain for us to follow him when once we had loſt ſight of him: We therefore gave over all thoughts of taking him, and return'd to our Ships very ſorry that we had miſs'd the Prize. As we were ſailing back to our Ships, we ſaw two *Zemblians* in a Canoe out at Sea; they ſpying us, row'd towards the Promontories and Rocks on the Coaſt to hide themſelves; but we took to our Oars ſo briskly, that we came up with them as they were rowing with all their Might towards a Rock: We ſurrounded them being in four Boats, and when they found they cou'd not eſcape us, they ſet up a hideous Howling, the moſt horrid Noiſe that ever I heard in my Life. We carry'd them aboard with us, we tow'd the Canoe along having faſten'd it to one of our Boats; 'twas like a Gondola

in

in Form, fifteen or sixteen Foot in length, and two and a half in breadth: 'Twas made of the Rib-Bones of Fish very artificially: The Sides were of Fish-Skins sow'd together; it all look'd like a huge Purse from one end of the Canoe to the other; the bottom was of the same Material with the Sides. The *Zemblians* are shut up in it as high as their Wastes, a drop of Water can't get into it, and they expose themselves in the foulest Weather without being afraid of Foundring. We perceiv'd one of the *Zemblians* we had taken was a Man, and the other a Woman. We made all the friendly Signs we cou'd to them, and Caress'd them as much to find out where their Habitations were, but we cou'd learn nothing. Upon this thirty of us landed again, took several Days Provision with us, and went in two Troops well arm'd, at about a hundred yards distance one from another, to try if we cou'd meet with any more of the Inhabitants. We hid our selves in Caverns under the Rocks, posting Centinels near Trees in open Places, proper for discovering if any of the *Zemblians* came that way, where we intended to seize and force them to shew us their Dwellings.

We were two Days before we cou'd hear of any thing that was to our Pur-

poſe, at laſt our Centinels gave us notice that they ſpy'd two coming down a Hill towards the Sea-ſide. Six of our Company ſtay'd in the Cavern, five more and my ſelf remov'd to one a little farther off, and a quarter of an Hour after theſe two *Zemblians* paſs'd by our Cavern without perceiving us: One of our Companions ſhot off a Fuzee to give notice to thoſe in the other Cavern that they were hemm'd in between us and them. When they came near their Cavern, they ſally'd out and we did the like from ours; The Salvages being thus entrapp'd, ſaw 'twas in vain to fly, ſo we eaſily took them.

Their Garments were of *Penguins* Skins the Feathers outwards; they had each a pair of ſtreight Breeches on, which came down no farther than their Knees, a Waſtcoat of the ſame, the Sleeves no longer than to their Elbows, the reſt of their Arms was naked; their Waſtcoats were picked before and behind, their Caps were in the Form of a Sugar-Loaf, their Stockings of the Skin of a Sea-Calf the Hair outwards: Tho' their Dreſs was the ſame, yet we ſoon perceiv'd which was the Man, and which the Woman. The Man ſeem'd to be about Twenty four years of Age, his Face like the reſt of thoſe Salvages was very broad, his

his Complexion ſwarthy, his Noſe flat; he had neither Beard on his Chin, nor Hair on his Head; at his Back hung a Quiver full of Arrows, and on his Shoulder he carry'd an Axe made of a Fiſh-Skin; In his other Hand he held a Bow according to Figure 17.

The Woman was about Twenty years old, her Hair hung down on each Shoulder twiſted in two Locks; ſhe had blew ſtreaks on her Chin, and four or five on her Forehead; her Ears and Noſtrils had Holes bor'd in them, in which ſome blew Stones or Rings of Fiſh-Bone were hung. Thoſe in her Ears were as big as a Filberd, and thoſe in her Noſe as a Pea. She held a Dart in her Hand as in the 18th Figure.

We try'd all the ways we cou'd think of to oblige them to ſhew us where they dwelt, but they wou'd not give us the leaſt Token to direct us. They were as ſtubborn as thoſe we had taken in the Canoe, and we were forc'd to carry them aboard without making any further Diſcoveries. When we brought them to their Fellow-Priſoners, we perceiv'd they knew one another, tho' their Garments were quite different, thoſe we took in the Canoe being dreſs'd in Sea-Calf-skin Cloaths, and theſe in *Penguin*'s Skins: The Hair of the Sea-Calf-Skin was

put outwards: The Waſtcoats of thoſe *Zemblians* were made of two Skins ſow'd together, the Tails dangling the one before and the other behind, almoſt as low as their Knees: Their Drawers were very ſtreight. The oldeſt was about Fifty years of Age; he had a round Beard, of a Cheſnut-Colour, he had no Hair on his Head. The Woman that was with him ſeem'd to be 30 years old; her Ears and Noſe were boar'd as the other Woman's were, and blew Stones hung in them; her Hair was twiſted and dangled like her Country-Woman's. They were both extream ugly, and the Man and Woman ſhorter and ſquatter, than either the *Laplanders*, *Samojedes*, *Borandians*, or *Syberians*. They had ſqueaking Voices and ſtinking Breaths, which latter was caus'd by their eating of Fleſh without Salt, or Fiſh dipt in Fiſh Oil. They drank nothing but Water; we cou'd never make 'em eat any Bread, Salt Meat or Fiſh, nor drink any Beer; they taſted Brandy now and then, but hated the Smell of Tobacco. Their Needles, the Points of their Darts and Arrows, and all their other Inſtruments, were made of Fiſh-Bones.

The wood Work of their Bows and Darts was very heavy, of a red brown Colour; that of their Arrows is much light-

er

grand whiter; when they go they waddle along like a Duck, and are of all the Creatures I ever ſaw, of the Race of Man, the moſt unlike the Image of that Creature.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Author's return and his arrival at Greenland; *of the Herring-Fiſhery; of a Storm and Meteors: Of his Journey to* Hecla: *Of the Manners, Cuſtoms and Superſtitions of the Iſlanders; and his arrival at* Copenhaguen.

THE Summer-Seaſon being very far advanc'd, for 'twas the latter end of *Auguſt*, and the Days growing ſhorter, we having half an Hour more Night than we had before, the Cold alſo encreaſing, and all our Companions longing to ſee their own Country again; we weigh'd Anchor the Wind at North North-Eaſt, and held our Courſe South-Weſt. We ſail'd before the Wind ſeveral Hours, and then it veer'd to South South-Eaſt, which oblig'd us to make our Way Northward to endeavour to reach

reach ſome Shoar. We Coaſted along with a South S. E. Gale till we came to *Greenland*, where the Wind ſhifted again to Weſt South-Weſt, and forc'd us to drop Anchor near a Fleet of *French* and *Dutch* Ships that were come thither a fiſhing, the Whale-Fiſhery being the Trade of that Place. The Ships did not lye far off Shoar, for the Whales as well as the Sea-Horſe are caught near Land: They are taken after the ſame manner as we took the Sea-Horſes, and when they are caught, they are cut to pieces and Greaſe taken out of them, which is put into a huge Kettle and melted to Oil, near ſome Huts which the Fiſhermen build for their Conveniency along the Sea-ſhoar. 'Twas very well for our *Zemblians* that we came where there was ſome Whale-Oil to be had, they had loſt their Stomachs and cou'd eat nothing for want of it; they cou'd get nothing down unleſs 'twas ſoak'd in that Oil, and all our Store was out.

I ſaw a Whale dreſs'd there, that had no leſs than Three hundred and fifty Pound Weight of Bone in her fit for Bodice-makers, beſides the Oil that came out of her Greaſe.

We ſtay'd but two Days in *Greenland*, the Wind ſpringing up North-Eaſterly we weigh'd Anchor and proceeded on our

our Voyage homewards. We had a fair Gale all that Day and the following Night, till five a Clock the next Morning, when we ſaw three Suns in the Heavens, one above the other. Theſe Meteors were ſo like the true Sun in brightneſs and bigneſs, that we cou'd not diſtinguiſh the one from the other. We alſo perceiv'd foul Weather gathering to the Southward, and ſoon afterwards we were overtaken by a violent Storm, which oblig'd us to furl moſt of our Sails, and fire a Gun for a Signal to our Company of the Danger we were in, thereby warning them to do as we had done. We gave our ſelves over for loſt, and entirely ſubmitted to the Will of Heaven. Three Hours after it blew terribly South South-Eaſt, it thunder'd with louder Claps than ever I heard before; the Sea was ſo rough and our Ship ſo toſs'd, that we cou'd only carry our Mizen Sail, the Yard lower'd almoſt to the Ship's Deck. Two Sailors were forc'd to tug at the Oar with Ropes, we having much ado to manage the Ship.

We ſail'd thus all that Day and the next Night, the Wind continuing as ſtiff as at firſt. Our Captain commanded one of the Men to get up on the Main-Top, to ſee if he cou'd ſpy Land and diſcover where abouts we were; the Sailor looking

looking round him cry'd out, he ſaw a great Fire: Our Maſter ſaid it was Mount *Hecla* in *Iſeland*, a Mountain that burns like *Ætna* or *Veſuvius*. The Weather being ſtill foul, we reſolv'd to make Land as faſt as we cou'd, tho' we had nothing to do there: We were afraid to keep out to Sea, our Ships having ſuffer'd much by the Storm. We arriv'd near the Shoar about Night, and as we lay by, heard dreadful Noiſes at Land; they were like the Fire of ſeveral Cannon, after which we ſaw Flames iſſue out of Mount *Hecla* in abundance.

We found ſo many Rocks on the Coaſt of this Iſle, and the Sea was ſo rough, that we did not care to venture nearer the Land than a League, but our Pilot aſſuring us he underſtood the Coaſts well, we made into Cape *Herſ*, where by the Skill and Care of the Pilot, we anchor'd in ſafety. One of our Company broke her Beak head againſt a Rock, and had like to have ſplit; the other receiv'd no more Damage than we did.

We immediately went aſhoar, our Maſter, Super-Cargo, my ſelf and fifteen of our Crew, the Maſter and Merchants of the other Ships accompanying us. We landed at a Village called *Herſ*, and hence we went to *Kirkebar*, a little City or large Town of *Iſeland*, where we

met eight or nine *Daniſh* Merchants, who were ſurpriz'd to ſee us there. They entertain'd us very cordially, and told us that the Day before the whole Iſland ſhook ſo violently, that they thought they ſhou'd be all ſwallow'd up. They gave us good Wine, good Bread, and good freſh Meat: There's Plenty of all ſorts of Cattel in the Iſland, which abounds in rich Paſtures, and the Beaſts that feed on 'em delight ſo much in the *Caitophe* Herb, that the Inhabitants are forc'd to ſtint 'em to ſuch a meaſure, or they wou'd eat till they burſt, which they wou'd certainly do, if they were ſuffer'd to eat their fill, as in other Countries.

Our Captain Supercargo, and the others of our Company, gave the chief Merchant at *Kirkebar* an Intimation, that they wou'd fain ſee what was to be ſeen in the Iſland that was rare. The Merchant preſently order'd Horſes to be got ready for all of us that were willing to go farther into the Countrey. I ſaid I wou'd make one, and we mounted eight in all, the reſt having not ſo much Curioſity as we, choſe rather to ſtay and drink at *Kirkebar*. The Merchant ſent one of his Servants and two Iſlanders along with us to be our Guides, and furniſh'd us with a Horſe-Load of Proviſions. We travell'd two Days together in By-ways

very

very difficult to paſs, rugged and unfrequented: At laſt we came near Mount *Heela*, five miles off it we found the Ground ſtrewed with Aſhes and Pumice-Stones, over which we paſs'd by the Foot of the Mountain.

The Weather was very ſerene and calm, and we ſaw neither Fire nor Flames come out of the Mountain: Upon this we reſolv'd to go up to the top, but our Guides inform'd us that if we went farther we ſhou'd be apt to fall into Pits of fiery Fumes, and 'twas impoſſible to pull us out. Thus all our Company, except my ſelf, declar'd againſt proceeding: I told 'em if they wou'd ſtay for me I wou'd go up my ſelf; they promis'd they wou'd, ſo I alighted and prepar'd to aſcend the Mountain. One of the *Daniſh* Merchants whom we met at *Kirkebar*, and who had accompany'd us out of Curioſity, ſaid he'd go along with me.

We gave our Horſes to our Guides who ſtay'd behind with the others who came out with us. We footed it over Aſhes and Pumice-Stones, ſometimes we were up to the Calves of our Legs in Aſhes, and yet we ſtill went forward, as if we reſolv'd to reach the top of *Heela*. We had not gone far before we ſpy'd a Flight of Crows and Vultures, that had their Neſts in the top of the Mountain;

we

we aſcended half a League, and then felt the Ground ſhake under us; we alſo heard ſuch a terrible Noiſe in the Bowels of the Earth, that it ſeem'd as if it wou'd burſt open: At the ſame time there appear'd on all ſides Chinks out of which iſſu'd blewiſh Flames, which ſtunk like the Stench of burning Brimſtone. This Sight made us turn back, for fear of being conſum'd to Aſhes by them.

We had ſcarce got down thirty yards, before a black ſmoaky Cloud aſcended out of the Mountain, ſo that it darken'd the Light of the Sun, and cover'd us ſo, that we cou'd not ſee one another; our Fears grew upon us, every ſtep we took, for behind us roſe Blaſts of Fire, Showrs of Aſhes and Pumice-Stones, which fell upon us thick as Hail, and this dreadful Storm was attended with horrible Noiſes, which made us cry out in a frightful manner, fancying that the infernal Furies were coming out of the Mountain to devour us; Beſides we expected every Moment that the Earth ſhou'd open and ſwallow us up, which added Wings to our Flight, and we ran as faſt as we cou'd to eſcape the Danger to which our Curioſity had expos'd us.

Fear made us ſo nimble, that in a quarter of an Hour we deſcended ſo much of the Mountain, as we were a full

full Hour in aſcending. When our Companions perceiv'd us come down ſo faſt upon them, they fell out a laughing at us, and their Laughter grew louder when they ſaw us in ſuch a Pickle, as black as if we had been plung'd in Soot. But their Mirth abated ſo ſoon as we came nearer them, and dropt down dead, for ſo they thought us, we being neither able to ſtir nor ſpeak. They rubb'd our Temples, Noſtrils and Hands with Vinegar, and did what they cou'd to bring us to Life again.

'Twas not long before we came to our ſelves; they gave us a good Cup of Canary, and then we recover'd Strength: We told 'em what had happen'd to us, and they rejoyc'd that we came off ſo well: We all left the Foot of the Mountain to go to ſee two Fountains 10 or 12 Miles off: The one is always boyling, and the other always ſo cold, that it turns every thing that's put into it to Stone. About a hundred Yards off the Foot of the Mountain, we ſaw a Pumice-Stone as big as a Wine Hogſhead, which had lately been caſt out of *Hecla*. Our Guides ſeeing that we were aſtoniſh'd at the bigneſs of the Stone, ſaid they had ſeen ſeveral much bigger than that which ten Men cou'd not ſtir, and that inſtead of Flames, Aſhes and Pumice-Stones,

Stones, there ſometimes iſſu'd out Floods of Water as out of Spouts, ſometimes nothing but Flames, ſometimes nothing but Aſhes, and ſometimes nothing but Stones.

After three Hours riding, we drew near the two Fountains; they are about thirty yards diſtance from each other; we came to the cold one firſt, and I put in a little Cane I had in my Hand; when I took it out again, I was ſurpriz'd to ſee the end of it which had touch'd the bottom, metamorphos'd into Iron, and weighing as heavy as that Metal. From thence we went to the boyling Fountain, at ten yards diſtance; from it we ſaw a parcel of great Animals as big as *Divers*, moſt of them red, who were friſking about and playing together. We ſtood looking on them awhile, pleas'd with the Novelty of the Sight. When we came nearer the Place we ſaw nothing; and when we were gone, they appear'd playing and friſking as before: They do ſo when they ſee no body, but if any body approaches, they plunge down to the bottom of the Fountain, which as our Guides inform'd us, is ſixty Fathom deep.

From the boyling Fountain we travell'd towards the Sea-ſide; and arriving within half a League of it, we heard Noiſes like the Voices of Perſons com-

plaining: Our ignorant Guides, Natives of the Country, wou'd fain have perſuaded us, that thoſe Noiſes were the Lamentations of the Damn'd, whom the Devil tormented, and that when he had roaſted them in the Flames of *Hecla*, he cool'd them in the Ice on the Coaſts. Tho' we did not give much Credit to this *Iceland* Tradition, we reſolv'd to go ſee thoſe Seas of Ice, which bound that part of the Iſle and no other. When I arriv'd at the Coaſt I found that theſe imaginary Complaints were occaſion'd only by the Agitation of the Wind and Water againſt the Ice, beating againſt it and the Ice againſt the Rocks. This Ice, ſaid our Guides, comes on their Coaſts in *June*, and goes away the fifteenth of *September*; 'twas the thirteenth when we were there.

Having ſeen all that was worth ſeeing, we return'd to *Kirkebar*, where we arriv'd three Days after: We ſtay'd a few Hours in Town and then went aboard, where we found the Governour of the Iſle accompany'd with the Biſhop of *Sealholt*, who came to ſee our Ships and diſcourſe with us, underſtanding we had been at *Zembla*.

The Iſlanders for the moſt part dwell in Caverns cut out of Rocks, the reſt live in Huts built after the manner of thoſe

thoſe in *Lapland*, ſome with Fiſh-Bones, and others with Wood cover'd with Turf: They and their Beaſts lye under the ſame Roof; they are all ugly both Men and Women; they are ſwarthy and are dreſt like the *Norwegians*; their Shirts and Smocks are made of Packing-Cloth, or *Sarplier*, and ſome few wear Coats made of Sea-Calf Skins, with the Hair outwards.

They live very plainly, as do all the Nations of the North; they lye on Hay or Straw in their Cloaths with Skins upon them, and make but one Bed for the whole Family.

All their Work is Fiſhing; they are Naſty, Rude and Brutal; they are almoſt all of 'em Wizards and Witches; they worſhip the Devil by the Name of *Kobald*: 'Tis ſaid he often appears to them under a Humane Figure. They have alſo a ſort of Houſhold-God or Idol, cut out of a piece of Wood with a Knife very hideous to look on, which they adore privately, and hide for fear of the *Lutheran* Prieſts, who teach them, as well as they can, the Chriſtian Faith, and endeavour to deliver them from the Bondage of Satan: But theſe *Barbarians* are fonder of their Diabolical Idol, and more conſtant to him, than ſome pretended Chriſtians to the pure Profeſſion of their moſt Holy Religion.

Some Travellers have written, and many report that they have all *Trolles*, which are a ſort of Familiar Spirits: I ſhall not go about to prove or diſprove it, but only report what I have heard on the Spot, and leave it to the Readers to believe or disbelieve as they think fit. Theſe Spirits, as I was inform'd by one of the *Daniſh* Merchants, ſerve them like faithful Servants, and warn 'em of all Accidents and Diſtempers that wou'd befal them: They wake them when they ſleep too long on Fiſhing-Days; and if they go about any Buſineſs, without asking their Advice, they never ſucceed in it.

They are alſo ſo expert in the Magick Art, that according to this Merchant's Relation, they will ſhew any Strangers what paſſes at home in their Houſes. They will let 'em ſee their Fathers, Mothers, Relations, Friends, or thoſe that they deſire to ſee living or dead; and ſell Wind to Sea-faring Men to carry them to any Port whatſoever: Nay, this Merchant was ſo credulous, as to aſſure me ſeriouſly, that thoſe who are a fiſhing under Mount *Hecla* at the time when any Battel is fought, let it be in any Part of *Europe* tho' never ſo diſtant, can ſee Devils going out and in at the Mountain, fetching and carrying of Souls very buſily. When

When ſome of their own Friends die and are tormented, after Death they appear to them very melancholy, tell them they are dead and are in the Hands of the Devil, who is a very hard Maſter; that they are condemn'd to live in *Hecla*, and muſt never come back to 'em; ſuch is the Ignorance and Superſtition of the wretched *Iſelanders*.

Tho' the Fields in *Iſeland* look fair, and there is plenty of Paſtures, no Wheat grows there, nor any other Grain fit to make Bread with: The Cold is ſo extream it kills the Seed, and blights by a North-Eaſt Wind, which is very violent in thoſe Parts.

Three Days after our Return from our Journey to Mount *Hecla*, and that we were a Shipboard, we took the opportunity of a North-Wind which ſtood fair for us, weigh'd Anchor, and ſet Sail, holding our Courſe South-South-Eaſt. We ſail'd before the Wind ſeveral Days, and then it blowing a very ſtiff Gale, it drove us on the Coaſts of *Norway*, where we made the Promontory of *Talſo*, a little City built on an Eminence four Leagues from the Sea. There is a fine Caſtle in it, and we rejoic'd that we were ſo near Land, hoping that we ſhou'd ſoon ſee an end of our Voyage. We coaſted along Shoar about twelve

Hours, and then the Wind chang'd with the Moon, which oblig'd us to keep out at Sea for fear of being driven back. Notwithſtanding our Caution, it blew ſo hard that we were forc'd to drive before the Wind forty Leagues backward: Then the Weather grew a little more calm and ſunk as much: Soon after that, we had not Wind enough in our Sails to ſtir us. Nothing is ſo tedious to a Sailor as a Calm, eſpecially upon a long Voyage, when he has been out a conſiderable time, and is impatient to reach home. A Storm wou'd be more welcome to him: He cannot tell how to employ his time, all his Thoughts run upon his dear Country, made dearer to him by many Months abſence, and his Impatience to ſee it torments him more under the delay of a Calm, than the fear of Shipwreck in a Tempeſt. In about two Hours we had a *Water-Cloud* to the South-Weſt: Our Mariners were preſently ſtruck with dreadful Conſternation, apprehending 'twoud fall upon us; we were oblig'd to furl all our Sails and lower our Yards down a Port, fearing it wou'd pour upon us. But it did not come nearer than two Leagues; we ſaw it fall at about that diſtance. Theſe Clouds are in Form lik a black Column or Pillar, which appears in the Heavens over

over the Sea, and if by Chance they fall on Ships, they ſink them to the bottom with the Floods of Water which pours down from them like Cataracts; eſpecially if it chance to fall perpendicularly. The Wind ſpringing North North-Eaſt, we proceeded on our Voyage ſo happily, that in ten Days time we arriv'd at *Copenhaguen*, where having ſaluted the Caſtle we dropt Anchor, put out our Boat and went aſhoar.

When we enter'd the City, his Majeſty was inform'd, that we had brought ſome *Zemblians* with us: He commanded us to bring them to Court, which we did, every body gazing at them as if they had been born in another World. The KING Himſelf admir'd alike the odneſs of their Dreſs and the ſtrangeneſs of their Figures. He order'd the Steward of his Houſhold to give Directions, that they might be carefully kept and provided for, and be taught the *Daniſh* Language, hoping he might then get ſomething out of 'em, relating to their Country, that wou'd be beneficial to his own. He commanded us to give him Account of the ſeveral Places we had been at, of the Manners of the People, and their way of Living: We gave His Majeſty full Satisfaction in all his Demands, and went then to wait on our

Owners to inform 'em, what Markets we had met with, and what Returns we had brought 'em home, which prov'd mightily to their Advantage and Content. Our Ships were order'd up to *Chriſtian Haven* to be unladen, which was done in two Days time. One of the chief Merchants of the Company Trading to the North, Preſented the KING in the Name of the reſt, with the two Sea-Horns which we brought home with us. He receiv'd 'em as Rarities that were of ineſtimable Price, believing they were really Unicorn Horns, of which abundance of Authors have written, and pretended there's a great deal of Virtue in them. The KING commanded they ſhou'd be depoſited in the Treaſury-Chamber, and promis'd to grant the Company in Return, as many Privileges, as 'twas in the Power of his Prerogative to beſtow on them. The Merchant who preſented the Horns, was rewarded with a Chain of Gold, with His Majeſty's Picture hanging to it, and had a Licence to Trade Cuſtom-Free, for a Term of Years.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Unicorn, Of the Virtues of its Horn; Reflections on the Maps and Charts of the North, and the Errors Committed by Geographers in their placing of Zembla, Greenland, *and* Samojedia.

HAving made mention of the Unicorn, whoſe Horn is ſo much ſpoken of, and valu'd for the Virtues which are attributed to it, I ſhall take this occaſion to ſpeak my own Sentiments on the Matter, after I have given the Reader an Account of the Sentiments of others. 'Tis very difficult to decide, what Creature it is which is properly the Unicorn. There are ſeveral Animals call'd by the Greeks *Monoceros*, and by the Latins *Unicornu:* Its among the Four-footed Beaſts, ſeveral wild Aſſes and wild Bulls, particularly the Bull of *Florida*. Among Serpents it is the horn'd Aſp and the red Salamander. Among Fiſh, the Sea-Horſe and many more, whoſe Names are unknown to *Europeans*. There are ſome Fowl, and even ſome Inſects, that have been

been thought to be Unicorns, ſuch as the *Flemiſh* and *Engliſh* Beetle, both which are frequently mention'd by Naturaliſts; and beſides theſe, other Animals of different Kinds in the *Indies*, have been by ſome fancy'd to be the Creature, call'd by the Latins *Unicornu*.

Some Authors will have it to be a Land-Beaſt, others a Water-Animal, and others an Amphibious Creature that lives alike by Land or Water.

Pliny ſays, the Unicorn is like a Bull, ſpeckled with white Spots, her Hoof hard and clos'd like a Horſes.

Munſter writes, 'tis like a Colt of three years old, of the colour of a Weazel, her Head like a Stags, her Legs and Feet little, and that her Horn grows out in the middle of her Forehead about two Cubits long.

Marcus Paulus the *Venetian* ſays, ſhe reſembles an Elephant, only ſhe is ſomewhat leſs; that her Colour is the ſame, and alſo her Shape or Form, excepting her Tail which is like a Bulls; and her Head like a Hogs, but ſo heavy that ſhe cannot hold it up.

Philoſtargius writes, that her Head is like a Dragon's, in the midſt of the Forehead her Horn grows out, of an indifferent Size, reſembling that of a Snail; that ſhe has a Beard on her Chin like

like a Goat; a long Neck, her Feet like thoſe of a Lyon, and the reſt of her Body much like that of a Stag, excepting her Skin, which is like a Snake's.

Heſiodorus adds, that ſhe is ſo nimble a Beaſt, the Hunters can never come at her.

Louis Paradis ſays, that ſometimes ſhe's taken, and that her Food afterwards is Peaſe, Lentils and Beans; that ſhe's not much bigger than a large Greyhound, but is not of ſo ſlender a Make. Her Body is bigger, her Skin in Colour like a Caſtor's, only 'tis ſleek; her Neck ſmall but long, her Legs long and her Feet cloven like a Stags; her Tail ſhort, her Muzzle like a Cows; her Eyes great, her Ears little, and between them grows her Horn about a Foot long.

Theiret affirms, that the Unicorn is as big as a Bull-Calf ſix Months old, that her Legs and Feet reſemble thoſe of an Aſs, her Ears like a Rain-Deer's, and that her Horn grows up ſtrait on the Top of her Head.

Louis de Bartheme, imagines the Unicorn is like a Bay-Horſe cloven-footed, and that her Horn grows in the middle of her Forehead.

Volneſs ſays, that the *Rhinoceros* is the Unicorn, *Kircher* that 'tis the Sea-Horſe, which he alſo calls *Lamia*, wherein he

is

is very much miſtaken, for the *Lamia* is another ſort of Fiſh, call'd by the Engliſh *Raken*, of which the Inhabitants of *Martenico*, *Guardeloupe*, and St. *Chriſtopher*'s, and the other *American* Iſlands ſtand in great fear; for they are in danger of being devour'd by 'em as often as they bathe in the Sea. It ſeems to me that a kind of Negro which I have heard of, is more probably the Unicorn than any mention'd by theſe Writers. 'Twas told me when I was in *Guinea*, that there was a *Negro* Man, and that 'twas not very rare to ſee one, who had a Horn as big as a Rams growing out of his Forehead, which reach'd as far back as the hind-part of the Crown of his Head, as is repreſented in Figure 19. Or perhaps it might be ſome ſuch Woman as I have read of, who had a Horn growing upright from the top of her Forehead, and who having it cut, dy'd in the Operation. 'Twas half a Foot long, and in Colour reſembled that of a Bull; the Figure being like Fig. 20.

Albert ſays, That the Baſe of a Unicorn's Horn is a Hand's breadth and a half in Diameter, and ten Foot long.

Lowis de Bartheme, that 'tis three Fathom in length; *Munſter*, that 'tis three Cubits; *Marcus Paulus*, that 'tis only two Foot long; *Louis Paradis*, a Foot and

and half; *Nicholas* of *Venice* a Foot; and *Cardan* but three Inches.

Pliny writes that the Unicorn's Horn is black; *Solinus* of a Purple Colour; *Louis Paradis* of a reddiſh yellow; *Albert*, of the Colour of a Stag's Horn; and others that 'tis whiter than Ivory.

When I reflect on the ſeveral Opinions of thoſe who have written of the Unicorn, and how they differ from one another, I ſometimes believe, that each of them ſpoke after his own Invention, to raiſe the Admiration of the Reader: The Learned *Bacoy* confirm'd me in this Belief, in aſſerting that this Animal, like the *Phœnix*, having never been ſeen by any one, each Author was at liberty to ſay what he pleas'd of it.

As for the Imaginary Virtues of the Unicorn's Horn, they are conſequently fictitious; but ſuppoſing that what has been pretended to be the true Horn was really ſuch, I will venture to affirm there is no more Virtue in it, than in that of a Stag, a Goat, or Elephant's Tooth, which is made uſe of to ſtop the ſpitting of Blood and a bloody Flux, which is done by the aſtringent Quality of thoſe Horns; and that cannot ſo properly be call'd a Virtue as a neceſſary Malignity. The Unicorn's Horn, or what has been ſaid to be ſo, has neither Smell nor Taſte, and

and of courſe can have nothing in it of ſuch Cordial Virtue as is pretended.

Since I came out of the North, I have look'd over ſeveral Charts drawn by the moſt celebrated Geographers, and I wonder'd to ſee that they had plac'd *Zembla* no farther forward in the Artick Pole to the Eaſt North-Eaſt of *Lapland* than it is: 'Tis more to the Northward than they make it. They are alſo in the wrong to divide it from the Continent, and to place it twelve hundred Leagues from *Greenland* as many of 'em do, for indeed 'tis contiguous with it. The Coaſts of *Greenland* join to thoſe of *Zembla*, and were it not for the prodigious Snows that fall there, and the rigour of the Seaſon, which renders the Place uninhabitable, one might eaſily go from *Greenland* to *Zembla* by Land, and from *Zembla*, paſſing the *Pater Noſters* a ridge of vaſt Mountains, enter *Samojedia*, and thence go either into the great *Tartary* or *Muſcovy*.

I admir'd alſo that they did not make the Streights call'd *Weygatz*, above ten *French* Leagues long, whereas they are five and thirty *German* Leagues in length. They ſhew by their Charts that Ships may by that Streight enter the great Sea of *Tartary*; which whatever they pretend is not to be done. Some have ſaid, that

that in the Days of Prince *Maurice*, a Ship paſs'd the Streights of *Weygatz*, and ſail'd into the *Tartarian* Sea, which is a plain Falſity as I ſhall make appear. This Streight as I have ſaid, is bounded by the *Pater Noſter* Mountains, the leaſt of which is half a League high; and 'tis agreed on all hands, that they are Ice which never melts. I am of the ſame Opinion, who having been in the Streights and near thoſe Mountains in the *Dog-Days*, the hotteſt Seaſon of the whole Year, was as cold then, as ever I was in *France* in the coldeſt Winter; which Seaſon laſts there all the Year, as Summer does in the Country of the *Parrots* and that of *Magellan*, both which are in the Antartick Pole.

As the *Terra Auſtralis* is call'd *Incognita*, ſo the *Terra Septentrionalis* may with as much Reaſon be ſo nam'd. Whoever will try the Experiment and go thither, either by Sea or Land, will without doubt diſcover Countries that were never diſcover'd before, and that may be call'd *New Worlds*; in imitation of *Columbus* and others, who have ſo nam'd the Places by them found out. *Democritus*, *Epicurus* and *Metrodorus*, were of Opinion that there were ſeveral Worlds; and on the contrary, *Hermes Triſmegiſtus* and *Plato*, thought there was but one, inhabited by Man

Man, form'd after the likeneſs of God the Creator, and That that World had no Beginning nor no End; at leaſt the knowledge of Mankind cou'd not find it out. Our Geographers have confuted that Sentiment, ſhewing by their Maps, that the Artick Pole is the higheſt Part, the Antartick the loweſt, and the Equator the middle of the Globe; which does not very well agree with *Strabo*, who will have *Parnaſſus* in *Greece* to be the middle of the World, as *Beroſus* places it on Mount *Ararat* in *Aſia*; and ſeveral Authors imagine that *Jeruſalem* was built in the middle of the Earth, according to the Words of the Royal Prophet, *He has work'd out our Salvation in the middle of the Earth.* To return from this Digreſſion to the Poſition of *Zembla* in our Charts, I wou'd feign know of our Geographers where they place old *Zembla*: I believe if ever they had been in the New, they wou'd believe there was no other; and that *New Holland*, *Weſtfriſeland*, and *Cape d'Aguer*, are in the Streights of *Weygats*, and not in the Sea of *Tartary*, as ſome of 'em place them. If the Perſon who wrote an Account of the Great Duke of *Muſcovy*'s Dominions, had ever been in the Country of the *Samojedians*, and was acquainted with their Cuſtoms he wou'd not have affirm'd that they eat Strangers,

Strangers, that the Great Duke ſends them Criminals to be devour'd by them which is not true. I muſt own they are very deform'd in Body and Mind, have no Notion of God or another World, believing their Souls and Bodies die together: They are the moſt miſerable Wretches on the Face of the Earth: In the Summer they feed only on the Fleſh of Bears, Wolves, Foxes, Sables, Crows, Eagles, and other wild Beaſts and Fowl. They eat it raw when they are a hunting, and only broil it upon the Coals when they are at home in their Cottages. In Winter-time they feed on the ſame Fleſh dry'd in the Sun in Summer, at which time they lay up ſtore of it for the Winter, when they have no freſh Meat, unleſs they by Chance kill Bears, who ſometimes come up to their very Huts to devour them, when they are almoſt ſtarv'd in the Field. Notwithſtanding this Barbarity they are civil to Strangers, and entertain them heartily with the beſt they have. Tho' they appear very Cruel and Wicked, they are not really ſo, but very ſimple and honeſt; and yet they border on the moſt wicked People in the World, the *Tartars* and *Tingoſins*, with whom they have Commerce as well as with the *Siberians*, *Borandians* and *Laplanders*.

'Tis true, in their Wars they are very Cruel and often eat their Enemies when they take them Priſoners. But then they are not eaſily provok'd to go to War, which perhaps is more to be attributed to their Cowardice, than their Love of Peace.

I hope the Reader will excuſe all the Digreſſions I have made from my main Subject, *A Voyage to the North*; I give it him as I found it in my own Papers, and thoſe of my Friend; if it wants the Ornament of Eloquence it has the Advantage of Truth; and tho' it treats of things very much out of the way of common Voyages, it delivers nothing but what is certain, and what any one that will take the ſame Pains as I have done, and has the ſame Curioſity, may obſerve in the ſame Countries. But they are ſo diſtant and ſo barbarous, that I believe few People will ever be curious enough about them, to enlarge theſe Obſervations; and give the World a fuller Account of the Northern People.

FINIS.